# Numerical Methods for Ordinary Differential Equations 

Habib Ammari<br>Wei Wu<br>Sanghyeon Yu

## Contents

Chapter 1. Some basics ..... 5
1.1. What is a differential equation? ..... 5
1.2. Some methods of resolution ..... 7
1.3. Important examples of ODEs ..... 10
Chapter 2. Existence, uniqueness, and regularity in the Lipschitz case ..... 19
2.1. Banach fixed point theorem ..... 19
2.2. Gronwall's lemma ..... 19
2.3. Cauchy-Lipschitz theorem ..... 20
2.4. Stability ..... 23
2.5. Regularity ..... 25
Chapter 3. Linear systems ..... 27
3.1. Exponential of a matrix ..... 27
3.2. Linear systems with constant coefficients ..... 28
3.3. Linear system with non-constant real coefficients ..... 29
3.4. Second order linear equations ..... 32
3.5. Linearization and stability for autonomous systems ..... 36
Chapter 4. Numerical solution of ordinary differential equations ..... 41
4.1. Introduction ..... 41
4.2. The general explicit one-step method ..... 41
4.3. Example of linear systems ..... 48
4.4. Runge-Kutta methods ..... 49
4.5. Multi-step methods ..... 55
4.6. Stiff equations and systems ..... 58
4.7. Perturbation theories for differential equations ..... 59
Chapter 5. Geometrical numerical integration methods for differential equations ..... 65
5.1. Introduction ..... 65
5.2. Structure preserving methods for Hamiltonian systems ..... 65
5.3. Runge-Kutta methods ..... 73
5.4. Long-time behaviour of numerical solutions ..... 76
Chapter 6. Finite difference methods ..... 79
6.1. Introduction ..... 79
6.2. Numerical algorithms for the heat equation ..... 79
6.3. Numerical algorithms for the wave equation ..... 83
6.4. Numerical algorithms for the Hamilton-Jacobi equation in one dimension ..... 84
Chapter 7. Stochastic differential equations ..... 87
7.1. Introduction ..... 87
7.2. Langevin equation ..... 87
7.3. Ornstein-Uhlenbeck equation ..... 88

| 7.4. | Existence and uniqueness of solutions in dimension one | 89 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 7.5. | Numerical solution of stochastic differential equations | 89 |

Bibliography 91
Index 93

## CHAPTER 1

## Some basics

### 1.1. What is a differential equation?

An ordinary differential equation (ODE) is an equation that contains one or more derivatives of an unknown function $x(t)$. The equation may also contain $x$ itself and constants. We say that an ODE is of order $n$ if the $n$-th derivative of the unknown function is the highest order derivative in the equation. The following equations are examples of ODEs:

## Membrane equation as a neuron model:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C \frac{d x(t)}{d t}+g x(t)=f(t) \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $x(t)$ is the membrane potential, i.e., the voltage difference between the inside and the outside of the neuron, $f(t)$ is the current flow due to excitation, $C$ is the capacitance and $g$ is the conductance (the inverse of the resistance) of the membrane.

Equation 1.1 is linear ODE of order 1.
The theta model: The theta model is a simple one-dimensional model for the spiking of a neuron. It takes the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d \theta(t)}{d t}=1-\cos \theta(t)+(1+\cos \theta(t)) f(t) \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f(t)$ are the inputs to the model. The variable $\theta$ lies on the unit circle and ranges between 0 and $2 \pi$. When $\theta=\pi$ the neuron spikes, that is, it produces an action potential. By the change of variables, $x(t)=\tan (\theta(t) / 2)$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x(t)}{d t}=x^{2}(t)+f(t) \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Population growth under competition for resources:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x(t)}{d t}=r x(t)-\frac{r}{k} x^{2}(t) \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r$ and $k$ are positive parameters. In (1.4), $x(t)$ is the number of cells at time instant $t, r x(t)$ is the growth rate and $-(r / k) x^{2}(t)$ is the death rate. Equations $\sqrt[1.2]{1.2}, 1.3$, and (1.4) are nonlinear ODEs of order 1.

## FitzHugh-Nagumo model:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d V}{d t}=f(V)-W+I  \tag{1.5}\\
\frac{d W}{d t}=a(V-b W)
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $f(V)$ is a polynomial of third degree, and $a$ and $b$ are constant parameters. The FitzHugh-Nagumo model is a two-dimensional simplification of the Hodgkin-Huxley model of spike generation in squid giant axons. It aims at isolating the mathematical properties of excitation and propagation from the electrochemical properties of sodium and potassium ion flow. In 1.5), $V$ is the membrane potential, $W$ is a recovery variable, and $I$ is the magnitude of stimulus current. Equation (1.5) is a system of nonlinear ODEs of order 1 .

## Langevin equation of motion for a single particle:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x(t)}{d t}=-a x(t)+\eta(t) \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $x(t)$ is the position of the particle at time instant $t, a>0$ is coefficient of friction, and $\eta$ is a random variable that represents some uncertainties or stochastic effects perturbing the particle. Equation (1.6) represents diffusion-like motion from the probabilistic perspective of a single microscopic particle moving in a fluid medium. Equation (1.6) is a linear stochastic ODE of order 1.

## Vander der Pol equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} x(t)}{d t^{2}}-a\left(1-x^{2}(t)\right) \frac{d x(t)}{d t}+x(t)=0 \tag{1.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $a$ is a positive parameter, which controls the nonlinearity and the strength of the damping. Equation (1.7) is used to generate waveforms corresponding to electrocardiogram patterns. Equation 1.7 is a nonlinear ODE of order 2.
1.1.1. Higher order ODEs. Here we introduce higher order ODEs. Let $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+2}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then an ODE of order $n$ is an equation of the form:

$$
F\left(t, x(t), \frac{d x}{d t}(t), \ldots, \frac{d^{n} x}{d t^{n}}(t)\right)=0
$$

where $x$ is a real-valued unknown function and $d x(t) / d t, \ldots, d^{n} x(t) / d t^{n}$ are its derivatives. We say that $\varphi \in \mathcal{C}^{n}(I)$ is a solution of the differential equation if $I$ is an open interval,

$$
\left(t, \varphi(t), \frac{d \varphi}{d t}(t), \ldots, \frac{d^{n} \varphi}{d t^{n}}(t)\right) \in \Omega
$$

for all $t \in I$, and

$$
F\left(t, \varphi(t), \frac{d \varphi}{d t}(t), \ldots, \frac{d^{n} \varphi}{d t^{n}}(t)\right)=0
$$

for all $t \in I$. When $x$ is a vector valued function, i.e., $x(t) \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$, then $\Omega \subset \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{(n+1) d}$.
Next we consider the following form of $n$-th order ODE:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{(n)}(t)=f\left(t, x, \frac{d x}{d t}, \ldots, \frac{d^{n-1} x}{d t^{n-1}}\right), \quad t \in I \tag{1.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $x(t) \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ and $f: I \times \mathbb{R}^{n d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$. To ensure uniqueness of the solution, 1.8 has to be augmented with the initial condition:

$$
\left(x\left(t_{0}\right), x^{\prime}\left(t_{0}\right), x^{\prime \prime}\left(t_{0}\right), \ldots, x^{(n-1)}\left(t_{0}\right)\right)^{\top}
$$

Here $T$ denotes the transpose.
We can reduce the high order ODE (1.8) into a first order ODE. Let us define

$$
y(t):=\left(x(t), d x(t) / d t, \ldots, d^{n-1} x(t) / d t^{n-1}\right)^{\top} \in \mathbb{R}^{n d}
$$

and

$$
F(t, y):=\left(y_{2}, \ldots, y_{n}, f\left(t, y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)\right)^{\top}
$$

for $y=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{n}\right)^{\top} \in \mathbb{R}^{n d}$ and $y_{i} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ for $i=1,2, \ldots, n$. Then the $n$-th order ODE 1.8 is equivalent to the following first order ODE:

$$
\frac{d y}{d t}=F(t, y(t))
$$

Example 1.1. Consider the second order ODE given by

$$
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}+p(t) \frac{d x}{d t}+q(t) x(t)=g(t)
$$

Then we have

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left[\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\frac{d x}{d t}
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\frac{d x}{d t} \\
-p(t) \frac{d x}{d t}-q(t) x(t)+g(t)
\end{array}\right]=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
0 & 1 \\
-q(t) & -p(t)
\end{array}\right]\left[\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\frac{d x}{d t}
\end{array}\right]+\left[\begin{array}{c}
0 \\
g(t)
\end{array}\right]
$$

The main problems concerning ordinary differential equations are:
(i) Existence of solutions;
(ii) Uniqueness of solutions with suitable initial conditions;
(iii) Regularity and stability of solutions (e.g. dependence on the initial conditions, large time stability, higher regularity);
(iv) Computation of solutions.

The existence of solutions can be proved by fixed point theorems, by the implicit function theorem in Banach spaces, and by functional analysis techniques. The problem of uniqueness is typically more difficult. Only in a very few special cases is it possible to compute solutions in some explicit form.

### 1.2. Some methods of resolution

In the following subsections, we present several examples of exactly solvable ODEs and then explain how to solve them.
1.2.1. Separation of variables. Let $I$ and $J$ be two open intervals and let $f \in \mathcal{C}^{0}(I)$ and $g \in \mathcal{C}^{0}(J)$ be two continuous functions. We look for solutions to the first order equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(t) g(x) \tag{1.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $t_{0} \in I$ and $x_{0} \in J$. If $g\left(x_{0}\right)=0$ for some $x_{0} \in J$, then the constant function $x(t)=x_{0}$ for $t \in I$ is a solution to 1.9 . Suppose that $g\left(x_{0}\right) \neq 0$. Then $g \neq 0$ in a neighborhood of $x_{0}$ and we can divide 1.9 by $g(x)$ and hence, separate the variables. We find

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{g(x)}=f(t) d t \tag{1.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (1.10) gives

$$
\int \frac{d x}{g(x)}=\int f(t) d t+c
$$

where the constant $c$ is uniquely determined by the initial condition.
Let $F$ and $G$ be the primitives of $f$ and $1 / g$, respectively. The function $G$ is strictly monotonic, because $G^{\prime}(x) \neq 0$, and thus invertible. The solution of the differential equation (1.9) is then

$$
x(t)=G^{-1}(F(t)+c)
$$

This method of solving ODEs is called the method of separation of variables and 1.9 is called a separable equation.

Example 1.2. Consider the following $O D E$ :

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=\frac{1+2 t}{\cos x(t)} \\
x(0)=\pi
\end{array}\right.
$$

In this case, we have $g(x)=1 / \cos x$ and $f(t)=1+2 t$. Note that $g$ is defined for $x \neq \pi / 2+k \pi, k \in$ $\mathbb{Z}$. By separating variables, we get

$$
\cos x d x=1+2 t d t
$$

By integration, we have

$$
\sin x(t)=t^{2}+t+C
$$

for some constant $C \in \mathbb{R}$. Then, from the initial condition $x(0)=\pi$, we see that $C=0$.

One might think that we can obtain the solution by taking the arcsin. But the function $x(t)=$ $\arcsin \left(t^{2}+t\right)$ is not the solution because $x(0)=\arcsin (0)=0$. In order to get the correct solution, we note that $\arcsin$ is the inverse of $\sin$ on $[-\pi / 2, \pi / 2]$, whereas $x(t)$ takes the values in a neighborhood of $\pi$. Letting $w(t)=x(t)-\pi$, we have $w(0)=x(0)-\pi=0$. So, we have $w(t)=-\arcsin \left(t^{2}+t\right)$. Therefore, we get the following correct solution:

$$
x(t)=\pi-\arcsin \left(t^{2}+t\right)
$$

1.2.2. Change of variables. There are a few important first-order equations that can be solved using some transformation.
1.2.2.1. Homogeneous equation. Consider the following ODE:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f\left(\frac{x(t)}{t}\right) \tag{1.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f: I \subset \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a continuous function on some open interval $I \subset \mathbb{R}$. The ODE (1.11) is called homogeneous. By the change of variables $x(t)=t y(t)$ where $y(t)$ is the new unknown function, the above ODE can be changed to a separable equation. Since

$$
\frac{d x}{d t}=y(t)+t \frac{d y}{d t}=f(y(t))
$$

we have a separable equation for $y$, which reads:

$$
\frac{d y}{f(y)-y}=\frac{d t}{t}
$$

Therefore, 1.11 can be solved by the method of separation of variables.
Example 1.3. Consider

$$
\frac{d x}{d t}=\frac{t^{2}+x^{2}}{x t}
$$

In this case, $f(s)=s+1 / s$ with $s=x / t$. By letting $y(t)=x(t) / t$, we get $y d y=d t / t$. So, we have $(1 / 2) y^{2}=\ln t+C$. Therefore, we obtain

$$
x(t)= \pm t \sqrt{2(\ln t+C)}
$$

1.2.2.2. Bernoulli equation. A differential equation is of Bernoulli type if it is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(t) x+g(t) x^{n}, \quad n \neq 0,1 \tag{1.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

The transformation $y=x^{1-n}$ gives the linear equation

$$
\frac{d y}{d t}=(1-n) f(t) y+(1-n) g(t)
$$

1.2.2.3. Riccati equation. A differential equation is of Riccati type if it is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(t) x+g(t) x^{2}+h(t) \tag{1.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Assume that a particular solution $x_{p}$ of 1.13 is known. Then the transformation $y=1 /\left(x-x_{p}(t)\right.$ yields the linear equation

$$
\frac{d y}{d t}=-\left(f(t)+2 x_{p}(t) g(t)\right) y-g(t)
$$

1.2.3. Method of integrating factors. Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x(t)}{d t}=f(t) \tag{1.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

By integrating (1.14), it follows that the solution $x(t)$ is given by

$$
x(t)=x(0)+\int_{0}^{t} f(s) d s
$$

Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}+p(t) x(t)=g(t) \tag{1.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p$ and $g$ are functions of $t$.
If 1.15 were of the form (1.14), then we could immediately write down a solution in terms of integrals. By 1.15 being of the form $(1.14$, we mean that the left-hand side is expressed as the derivative of our unknown quantity. To make this happen, we can multiply 1.15 by a function, $\mu(t)$, and ask whether the resulting equation can be put in the form 1.14).

Let us look for $\mu(t)$ such that

$$
\mu(t) \frac{d x}{d t}+\mu(t) p(t) x(t)=\frac{d}{d t}(\mu(t) x(t)) .
$$

Taking derivatives, we have $(1 / \mu) d \mu / d t=p(t)$ or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \ln \mu(t)=p(t) \tag{1.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating 1.16 gives

$$
\mu(t)=\exp \left(\int_{0}^{t} p(s) d s\right)
$$

up to a multiplicative constant. The equation 1.15 is transformed to

$$
\frac{d}{d t}(\mu(t) x(t))=\mu(t) g(t)
$$

This equation is precisely of the form 1.14 , so we can immediately conclude

$$
x(t)=\frac{1}{\mu(t)}\left(\int_{0}^{t} \mu(s) g(s) d s\right)+\frac{C}{\mu(t)}
$$

where the constant $C$ can be determined from the initial condition $x(0)=x_{0}$. The function $\mu(t)$ is called the integrating factor.

Example 1.4. Consider

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}+\frac{1}{t+1} x(t)=(1+t)^{2}, \quad t \geq 0 \\
x(0)=1
\end{array}\right.
$$

In this case, $p(t)=1 /(t+1)$ and $g(t)=(1+t)^{2}$. Then the integrating factor $\mu$ is

$$
\mu(t)=\exp \left(\int_{0}^{t} p(s) d s\right)=e^{\ln (t+1)}=t+1
$$

Therefore, we get

$$
x(t)=\frac{1}{t+1} \int_{0}^{t}(s+1)^{3} d s+\frac{C}{t+1}=\frac{(t+1)^{3}}{4}+\frac{C-\frac{1}{4}}{t+1}
$$

Then, from the initial condition $x(0)=1$, we obtain $C=1$.

Example 1.5. (Bernoulli's equation) Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}+p(t) x(t)=g(t) x^{\alpha}(t) \tag{1.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\alpha$ is a real parameter satisfying $\alpha \notin\{0,1\}$. Letting $x=z^{\frac{1}{1-\alpha}}$, we get

$$
\frac{d x}{d t}=\frac{1}{1-\alpha} z^{\frac{\alpha}{1-\alpha}} \frac{d z}{d t}
$$

Then 1.17) can be reduced to the following linear equation:

$$
\frac{d z}{d t}+(1-\alpha) p(t) z(t)=(1-\alpha) g(t)
$$

which can be solved by the method of integrating factors.

### 1.3. Important examples of ODEs

### 1.3.1. Autonomous ODEs.

Definition 1.6. The equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x(t)}{d t}=f(t, x(t)) \tag{1.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

is called autonomous if $f$ is independent of $t$.
Any ODE can be rewritten as an autonomous ODE on a higher-dimensional space. Writing $y=(t, x(t)), 1.18$ is equivalent to the autonomous ODE

$$
\frac{d y(t)}{d t}=F(y(t))
$$

where $F(y)=\binom{1}{f(t, x(t))}$.
1.3.2. Exact equations. Let $\Omega=I \times \mathbb{R} \subset \mathbb{R}^{2}$ with $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ being an open interval. Let $f, g \in \mathcal{C}^{0}(\Omega)$. We look for a solution $x \in \mathcal{C}^{1}(I)$ of the differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(t, x(t))+g(t, x(t)) \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0 \tag{1.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

satisfying the initial condition $x\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}$ for some $\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right) \in \Omega$.
Consider the differential form

$$
\omega=f(t, x) \mathrm{d} t+g(t, x) \mathrm{d} x
$$

Definition 1.7. The differential form is called exact if there exists $F \in \mathcal{C}^{1}(\Omega)$ such that

$$
\omega=\mathrm{d} F=\frac{\partial F}{\partial t} \mathrm{~d} t+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x} \mathrm{~d} x
$$

The function $F$ is called a potential of $\omega$. In this case the differential equation 1.19) is called an exact equation.

Theorem 1.8 (Implicit function theorem). Suppose that $F(t, x)$ is continuously differentiable in a neighborhood of $\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{d}$ and $F\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)=0$. Suppose that $\partial F / \partial x\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right) \neq 0$. Then there exist $\delta>0$ and $\epsilon>0$ such that for each $t$ satisfying $\left|t-t_{0}\right|<\delta$, there exists a unique $x$ such that $\left|x-x_{0}\right|<\epsilon$ for which $F(t, x)=0$. This correspondence defines a function $x(t)$ continuously differentiable on $\left\{\left|t-t_{0}\right|<\delta\right\}$ such that

$$
F(t, x)=0 \Leftrightarrow x=x(t)
$$

Theorem 1.9. Suppose that $\omega$ is an exact form with potential $F$ such that

$$
\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right) \neq 0
$$

then the equation $F(t, x)=F\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)$ implicitly defines a function $x \in \mathcal{C}^{1}(I)$ for some open interval $I$ containing $t_{0}$, which solves (1.19) with the initial condition $x\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}$. This solution is unique on $I$.

Proof. Suppose without loss of generality that $F\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)=0$. By the implicit function theorem, there exist $\delta, \eta>0$ and $x \in \mathcal{C}^{1}\left(t_{0}-\delta, t_{0}+\delta\right)$ such that

$$
\left\{(t, x) \in \Omega:\left|t-t_{0}\right|<\delta,\left|x-x_{0}\right|<\eta, F(t, x)=0\right\}=\left\{(t, x(t)) \in \Omega:\left|t-t_{0}\right|<\delta\right\}
$$

By differentiating the identity $F(t, x(t))=0$, we get

$$
0=\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} F(t, x(t))=\frac{\partial F}{\partial t}(t, x(t))+\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}(t, x(t)) \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=f(t, x(t))+g(t, x(t)) \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t},
$$

and hence $x(t)$ is a solution of the differential equation. Moreover, $x\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}$.
On the other hand, if $z \in \mathcal{C}^{1}(I)$ is a solution to 1.19 such that $z\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}$, then

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} F(t, z(t))=0 \Longrightarrow F(t, z(t))=F\left(t_{0}, z\left(t_{0}\right)\right)=0 \Longrightarrow z(t)=x(t)
$$

Definition 1.10. Let $f, g \in \mathcal{C}^{1}(\Omega)$. The differential form $\omega=f \mathrm{~d} t+g \mathrm{~d} x$ is closed in $\Omega$ if

$$
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}=\frac{\partial g}{\partial t}
$$

for all $(t, x) \in \Omega$.
Proposition 1.11. An exact differential form $\omega=f \mathrm{~d} t+g \mathrm{~d} x$ with a potential $F \in \mathcal{C}^{2}$ is closed since by Schwarz's theorem

$$
\frac{\partial^{2} F}{\partial t \partial x}=\frac{\partial^{2} F}{\partial x \partial t}
$$

for all $(t, x) \in \Omega$. The converse is also true if $\Omega$ is simply connected: If $\omega$ is closed then $\omega$ is exact and is associated to a potential $F \in \mathcal{C}^{2}$.

Closed forms always have a potential (at least locally).
Example 1.12. Consider the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
t x^{2}+x-t \frac{\mathrm{~d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0 \tag{1.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $f(t, x)=t x^{2}+x$ and $g(t, x)=-t$. Since

$$
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}=2 x t+1 \neq \frac{\partial g}{\partial t}=-1
$$

equation 1.20) is not exact.
Example 1.13. The equation

$$
t+\frac{1}{x}-\frac{t}{x^{2}} \frac{\mathrm{~d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0
$$

is exact with the potential function $F$ given by

$$
F(t, x)=\frac{t^{2}}{2}+\frac{t}{x}+C, \quad C \in \mathbb{R}
$$

The equation $F(t, x)=0$ implicitly defines the solutions (locally for $t \neq 0$ and $x \neq 0$ such that $\partial F / \partial x(t, x) \neq 0)$.

Example 1.14. Consider the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
-2 t^{2}+2 x-x^{2}+t(1-x) \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0 \tag{1.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, $f(t, x)=-2 t^{2}+2 x-x^{2}$ and $g(t, x)=t(1-x)$. Since

$$
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}=2-2 x \neq \frac{\partial g}{\partial t}=1-x
$$

equation (1.21) is not exact. However, multiplying 1.21) by $t$ gives

$$
-2 t^{3}+2 x t-t x^{2}+t^{2}(1-x) \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0
$$

We see from this that $f(t, x)=-2 t^{3}+2 t x-t x^{2}$ and $g(t, x)=t^{2}(1-x)$. This leads to

$$
\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}=2 t-2 t x, \quad \frac{\partial g}{\partial t}=2 t(1-x)
$$

which satisfies the condition $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}=\frac{\partial g}{\partial t}$. Thus, there must exist a function $F(t, x)$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial F}{\partial t}=f(t, x) \quad \text { and } \frac{\partial F}{\partial x}=g(t, x) \tag{1.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating equations (1.22) with respect to $t$ and $x$ and comparing the obtained formulas yields

$$
F(t, x)=\frac{1}{2} t^{4}-t^{2} x+\frac{1}{2} t^{2} x^{2}+C
$$

for some constant $C$. Therefore, the differential equation 1.21) has the general solution $F(t, x)=0$ (locally for $t \neq 0$ and $x \neq 1$ ).

### 1.3.3. Hamiltonian systems.

Definition 1.15. Let $M$ be a subset of $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ and let $H: \mathbb{R}^{d} \times M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a $\mathcal{C}^{1}$ function.
The Hamiltonian system with Hamiltonian $H$ is given by the first-order system of ODEs

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} p}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =-\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(p, q)  \tag{1.23}\\
\frac{\mathrm{d} q}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(p, q)
\end{align*}\right.
$$

Example 1.16. An important basic example of a Hamiltonian system is the simple harmonic oscillator with Hamiltonian

$$
H(p, q)=\frac{1}{2} \frac{p^{2}}{m}+\frac{1}{2} k q^{2}
$$

where $m$ and $k$ are positive constants. Given a potential $V$, Hamiltonian systems of the form

$$
H(p, q)=\frac{1}{2} p^{\top} M^{-1} p+V(q)
$$

where $M$ is symmetric positive definite matrix and $\top$ denotes the transpose, are widely used in molecular and biological dynamics.

We now introduce the notion of an invariant (also called first integral) for a system of ODEs.
Definition 1.17. Let $\Omega=I \times D$, where $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ and $D \subset \mathbb{R}^{d}$. Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=f(t, x(t)) \tag{1.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$. We call $F: D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ an invariant of 1.24 if $F(x(t))=$ Constant. A point $(t, x) \in I \times D$ is called a stationary point if $f(t, x)=0$.

EXAMPLE 1.18. Consider the system of Lotka-Volterra's ODEs given by

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} u}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =u(v-2)  \tag{1.25}\\
\frac{\mathrm{d} v}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =v(1-u)
\end{align*}\right.
$$

The system of ODEs 1.25) is used to describe the dynamics of biological systems in which two species interact, one as a predator and the other as prey.

Define

$$
F(u, v):=\ln u-u+2 \ln v-v .
$$

$F(u, v)$ is an invariant of 1.25 . In fact, by differentiating with respect to time, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} F(u, v) & =\frac{1}{u} \frac{\mathrm{~d} u}{\mathrm{~d} t}-\frac{\mathrm{d} u}{\mathrm{~d} t}+\frac{2}{v} \frac{\mathrm{~d} v}{\mathrm{~d} t}-\frac{\mathrm{d} v}{\mathrm{~d} t} \\
& =v-2-\frac{\mathrm{d} u}{\mathrm{~d} t}+2(1-u)-\frac{\mathrm{d} v}{\mathrm{~d} t} \\
& =(v-2)-u(v-2)+2(1-u)+v(1-u) \\
& =(v-2)(1-u)+(2-v)(1-u) \\
& =0
\end{aligned}
$$

For the system $1.25,(u, v)=(1,2)$ and $(u, v)=(0,0)$ are two stationary points.
Lemma 1.19. The Hamiltonian $H$ is an invariant of the associated Hamiltonian system (1.23).
Proof. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} H(p(t), q(t)) & =\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(p(t), q(t)) \frac{\mathrm{d} p}{\mathrm{~d} t}+\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(p(t), q(t)) \frac{\mathrm{d} q}{\mathrm{~d} t} \\
& =-\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(p(t), q(t)) \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(p(t), q(t))+\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(p(t), q(t)) \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(p(t), q(t))=0 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, $H(p, q)$ is an invariant of the system of equations 1.23).
Example 1.20. Consider the system of equations

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\mathrm{d} p}{\mathrm{~d} t}=-\sin q \\
\frac{\mathrm{~d} q}{\mathrm{~d} t}=p
\end{array}\right.
$$

Here, $H(p, q)=\frac{1}{2} p^{2}-\cos q$ is the Hamiltonian of the above system, because

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}=\sin q=-\frac{\mathrm{d} p}{\mathrm{~d} t} \\
\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}=p=\frac{\mathrm{d} q}{\mathrm{~d} t}
\end{array}\right.
$$

There is another equivalent expression for Hamiltonian systems. Let $x=(p, q)^{\top}$ (note that $p, q \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ ), and let

$$
J=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & I  \tag{1.26}\\
-I & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $I$ denotes the $d \times d$ identity matrix. Note that

$$
J^{-1}=J^{\top}
$$

We can rewrite the Hamiltonian system (1.23) in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=J^{-1} \nabla H(x) \tag{1.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, we use the notation $\nabla H(x):=\left(\frac{\partial H}{\partial x}\right)^{\top}=\left(\frac{\partial H}{\partial x_{1}}, \ldots, \frac{\partial H}{\partial x_{d}}\right)^{\top}$. For a vector function $f: \mathbb{R}^{d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$, $f(x)=\left(f_{1}(x), \ldots, f_{d}(x)\right)$, we define the Jacobian matrix $f^{\prime}$ of $f$ by

$$
f^{\prime}(x):=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial x_{1}} & \ldots & \frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial x_{d}} \\
\vdots & & \vdots \\
\frac{\partial f_{d}}{\partial x_{1}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_{d}}{\partial x_{d}}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Definition 1.21 (Symplectic linear mapping). A matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{2 d} \times \mathbb{R}^{2 d}$ (which is also a linear mapping from $\mathbb{R}^{2 d}$ to $\mathbb{R}^{2 d}$ ) is called symplectic if $A^{\top} J A=J$.

Definition 1.22 (Symplectic mapping). A differentiable map $g: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2 d}$ is called symplectic if the Jacobian matrix $g^{\prime}(p, q)$ is everywhere symplectic, i.e., if

$$
g^{\prime}(p, q)^{\top} J g^{\prime}(p, q)=J
$$

Taking the transpose of both sides of the above equation, we also have

$$
g^{\prime}(p, q)^{\top} J^{\top} g^{\prime}(p, q)=J^{\top}
$$

or equivalently,

$$
g^{\prime}(p, q)^{\top} J^{-1} g^{\prime}(p, q)=J^{-1}
$$

TheOrem 1.23. If $g$ is a symplectic mapping, then it preserves the Hamiltonian form of the equation.

Proof. Let $x=(p, q)^{\top}, y=g(p, q)^{\top}$ and let $G(y):=H(x)$. By using the chain rule, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial x} H(x) & =\frac{\partial}{\partial x} G(y) \\
& =\frac{\partial}{\partial y} G(y) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} y(x) \\
& =\frac{\partial}{\partial y} G(y) g^{\top \top}(p, q)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d} y}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =g^{\prime \top}(p, q) \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t} \\
& =g^{\prime \top}(p, q) J^{-1}\left(\frac{\partial H(x)}{\partial x}\right)^{\top} \\
& =g^{\prime \top} J^{-1} g^{\prime} \nabla_{y} G(y) \\
& =J^{-1} \nabla_{y} G(y),
\end{aligned}
$$

and therefore,

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} y}{\mathrm{~d} t}=J^{-1} \nabla_{y} G(y)
$$

Definition 1.24 (Flow). We define the flow by $\phi_{t}\left(p_{0}, q_{0}\right)=\left(p\left(t, p_{0}, q_{0}\right), q\left(t, p_{0}, q_{0}\right)\right), \phi_{t}: U \rightarrow$ $\mathbb{R}^{2 d}, U \subset \mathbb{R}^{2 d}$, and $p_{0}$ and $q_{0}$ are the initial data at $t=0$.

Theorem 1.25 (Poincaré's theorem). Suppose that $H$ is twice differentiable. Then the flow $\phi_{t}$ is a symplectic transformation whenever it is defined.

Proof. Let $y_{0}=\left(p_{0}, q_{0}\right)$. Note that

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)=J^{-1} \nabla^{2} H\left(\phi_{t}\left(y_{0}\right)\right) \frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}} .
$$

Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\top} J\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)\right) \\
= & \left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\prime \top} J\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)+\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\top} J\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\prime} \\
= & \left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\top} \nabla^{2} H J^{-\top} J\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)+\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\top} J J^{-1} \nabla^{2} H\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right) \\
= & 0
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\nabla^{2} H$ is the Hessian matrix of $H(p, q)$ (and is symmetric). Moreover, since $\partial \phi_{t} / \partial y_{0}$ at $t=0$ is the identity map, the identity

$$
\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\top} J\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)=J
$$

is satisfied for all $t$ and all $\left(p_{0}, q_{0}\right)$ as long as the solution remains in the domain of definition of $H$.

The following result shows that the symplecticity of the flow is a characteristic property of the Hamiltonian system.

Theorem 1.26. Let $f: U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2 n}$ be continuously differentiable. Then $\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=f(x)$ is locally Hamiltonian if and only if $\phi_{t}(x)$ is symplectic for all $x \in U$ and for all sufficiently small $t$.

Proof. The necessity follows from Theorem 1.25. We therefore suppose that $\phi_{t}$ is symplectic, and we have to prove the local existence of a Hamiltonian $H$ such that $f(x)=J^{-1} \nabla H(s)$. Using the fact that $\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}$ is a solution of

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} y}{\mathrm{~d} t}=f^{\prime}\left(\phi_{t}\left(y_{0}\right)\right) y
$$

we obtain

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\top} J\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)\right)=\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)^{\top}\left[f^{\prime}\left(\phi_{t}\left(y_{0}\right)\right)^{\top} J+J f^{\prime}\right]\left(\frac{\partial \phi_{t}}{\partial y_{0}}\right)=0
$$

Putting $t=0$, it follows from $J=-J^{\top}$ that $J f^{\prime}\left(y_{0}\right)$ is a symmetric matrix for all $y_{0}$. The integrability lemma below shows that $J f(y)$ can be written as the gradient of a function $H$.

Lemma 1.27 (Integrability lemma). Let $D \subset \mathbb{R}^{d}$ be an open set and let $g: D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$ be of class $\mathcal{C}^{1}$. Suppose that the Jacobian $g^{\prime}(y)$ is symmetric for all $y \in D$. Then, for every $y_{0} \in D$, there exists a neighborhood of $y_{0}$ and a function $H(y)$ such that

$$
g(y)=\nabla H(y)
$$

on this neighborhood.
Proof. Suppose that $y_{0}=0$, and consider a ball around $y_{0}$ which is contained in $D$. On this ball we define

$$
H(y)=\int_{0}^{1} y^{\top} g(t y) \mathrm{d} t
$$

Differentiating with respect to $y_{k}$, and using the symmetry assumption

$$
\frac{\partial g_{i}}{\partial y_{k}}=\frac{\partial g_{k}}{\partial y_{i}}
$$

yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial H}{\partial y_{k}} & =\int_{0}^{1}\left(g_{k}(t y)+y^{\top} \frac{\partial g}{\partial y_{k}}(t y) t\right) \mathrm{d} t \\
& =\int_{0}^{1} \frac{\mathrm{~d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(t g_{k}(t y)\right) \mathrm{d} t=g_{k}(y)
\end{aligned}
$$

which proves that

$$
\nabla H=g
$$

1.3.4. Gradient systems. Finally, consider the gradient systems.

Definition 1.28. Gradient systems are differential equations that have the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=-\nabla V(x) \tag{1.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $V$ (called the potential function) being a real-valued function.
In order to guarantee that the right-hand side of 1.28 is a continuously differentiable function of $x$, one requires that $V$ is twice-continuously differentiable.

On solutions to 1.28 one has

$$
\frac{d}{d t} V(x(t))=\nabla V(x(t)) \cdot \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=-|\nabla V(x)|^{2}
$$

A differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=f(x)=\left(f_{1}(x), \ldots, f_{d}(x)\right) \tag{1.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a gradient system if and only if there exists a scalar-valued function $V(x)$ so that

$$
-\left(f_{1}(x), \ldots, f_{d}(x)\right)=\left(\frac{\partial V}{\partial x_{1}}(x), \ldots, \frac{\partial V}{\partial x_{d}}(x)\right)
$$

In dimension $d=1$, one can always choose an antiderivative $V$ of $-f$ so that

$$
\frac{d V}{d x}(x)=-f(x)
$$

Equation 1.29 is always a gradient system in dimension one.
In dimension two, a system

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x_{1}}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =f_{1}\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)  \tag{1.30}\\
\frac{\mathrm{d} x_{2}}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =f_{2}\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)
\end{align*}\right.
$$

is a gradient system if and only if there is a potential $V\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)$ so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial V}{\partial x_{1}}=-f_{1}, \quad \frac{\partial V}{\partial x_{2}}=-f_{2} \tag{1.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

A necessary and sufficient condition for solvability of 1.31 is the equality of mixed partials,

$$
\frac{\partial f_{1}}{\partial x_{2}}=\frac{\partial f_{2}}{\partial x_{1}}
$$

In the general case, the necessary and sufficient condition is again equality of mixed partials expressed as

$$
\frac{\partial f_{i}}{\partial x_{j}}=\frac{\partial f_{j}}{\partial x_{i}} \quad \text { for all } 1 \leq i<j \leq d
$$

Lemma 1.29. The Hamiltonian system 1.23) is a gradient system if and only if the function $H$ is harmonic.

Proof. Suppose that $H$ is harmonic, i.e.,

$$
\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p^{2}}+\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial q^{2}}=0
$$

Then the Jacobian of $J^{-1} \nabla H$ given by

$$
\left(J^{-1} \nabla H\right)^{\prime}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
-\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p \partial q} & -\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial q^{2}} \\
\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p^{2}} & \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p \partial q}
\end{array}\right)
$$

is symmetric. The integrability lemma shows that there exists $V$ such that $J^{-1} \nabla H=\nabla V$ and therefore, the Hamiltonian system is a gradient system.

Suppose that the Hamiltonian system is a gradient system. Then, there exists $V$ such that

$$
\frac{\partial V}{\partial p}=\frac{\partial H}{\partial q} \quad \text { and } \quad \frac{\partial V}{\partial q}=-\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}
$$

Therefore,

$$
\Delta H:=\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p^{2}}+\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial q^{2}}=0
$$

Example 1.30. The Hamiltonian system with $H(p, q)=p^{2}-q^{2}$ is a gradient system.
1.3.5. Hamilton-Jacobi equation. The Hamilton-Jacobi equation is used to generate particular symplectic transformations that simplify Hamiltonian systems.

Let $d=1$ and let

$$
H(p, q)=\frac{1}{2} p^{2}+V(q)
$$

Consider the Hamiltonian-Jacobi equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}+H\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial q}, q\right)=0, \quad q \in \mathbb{R}, t \geq 0  \tag{1.32}\\
u(0, q)=u_{0}(q), \quad q \in \mathbb{R}
\end{array}\right.
$$

A smooth function $u(P, q, t)$ satisfying 1.32 can be used to map the variables $(p, q)$ to a set of variables $(P, Q)$ that are constants over time. Let $p=\frac{\partial u}{\partial q}$, and define $Q=\frac{\partial u}{\partial P}$. Then, $(p, q) \mapsto$ $(P, Q)$ is symplectic. Moreover, in the new coordinates $(P, Q)$, the Hamiltonian system 1.23) reduces to

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\mathrm{d} P}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0  \tag{1.33}\\
\frac{\mathrm{~d} Q}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

and becomes trivial to solve.
Problem 1.31 (Exact equations). Consider the equation $F(t, x)=0$, where $F \in \mathcal{C}^{2}\left(\mathbb{R}^{2}, \mathbb{R}\right)$. Suppose $x(t)$ solves this equation.
(i) Show that $x(t)$ satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(t, x) \frac{d x}{d t}+f(t, x)=0 \tag{1.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
g(t, x)=\frac{\partial F(t, x)}{\partial x} \quad \text { and } \quad f(t, x)=\frac{\partial F(t, x)}{\partial t}
$$

(ii) Show that we have

$$
\frac{\partial g(t, x)}{\partial t}=\frac{\partial f(t, x)}{\partial x}
$$

and deduce that 1.34 is exact.
(iii) Conversely, show that if a first-order equation as 1.34) is exact, then there is a corresponding function $F$ as above. Find an explicit formula for $F$ in terms of $f$ and $g$. Is $F$ uniquely determined by $f$ and $g$ ?
(iv) Show that

$$
(2 t x+3 t+5) \frac{d x}{d t}+3 t^{2}+t+x^{2}+3 x=0
$$

is exact. Find $F$ and find the solution.
Problem 1.32 (Method of integrating factor). Consider

$$
g(t, x) \frac{d x}{d t}+f(t, x)=0
$$

(i) Prove that $\mu(t, x)$ is an integrating factor if

$$
\mu(t, x) g(t, x) \frac{d x}{d t}+\mu(t, x) f(t, x)=0
$$

is exact.
(ii) Consider

$$
t \frac{d x}{d t}+3 t-2 \frac{d x}{d t}=0
$$

and look for an integrating factor $\mu$ depending only on $t$. Solve the equation.
Problem 1.33. (i) Prove that a smooth differential map $g: \mathbb{R}^{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2}$ is symplectic if and only if $\operatorname{det} g^{\prime}=1$.
(ii) Find a counterexample to the statement in (i) in $\mathbb{R}^{2 d}$ for $d>1$.

Problem 1.34. Consider the system of linear equations

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d X}{d t}=A X(t) \\
X(0)=X_{0}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $X, X_{0}$, and $A$ are $d \times d$ real matrices.
(i) Prove that if $A$ is a skew-symmetric matrix then $X^{\top} X$ is an invariant of the system.
(ii) Prove that if $X_{0}$ is orthogonal then the solution $X(t)$ is orthogonal for all $t \geq 0$.

Problem 1.35 (Transport theorem). Let $\phi_{t}$ denote the flow of the system $d x / d t=f(x)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$, and let $\Omega$ be a bounded domain in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$. Define

$$
V(t)=\int_{\phi_{t}(\Omega)} d x_{1} \ldots d x_{d}
$$

and recall that the divergence of a vector field $f=\left(f_{1}, \ldots, f_{d}\right)^{\top}$ is

$$
\nabla \cdot f=\sum_{i=1}^{d} \frac{\partial f_{i}}{\partial x_{i}}
$$

(i) Use Liouville's theorem and the change of variables formula for multiple integrals to prove that

$$
\frac{d V}{d t}=\int_{\phi_{t}(\Omega)}(\nabla \cdot f) d x_{1} \ldots d x_{d}
$$

(ii) Prove that the flow of a vector field whose divergence is everywhere negative contracts volume.
(iii) Suppose that $g: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is continuously differentiable. Prove the transport theorem

$$
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{\phi_{t}(\Omega)} g(t, x) d x_{1} \ldots d x_{d}=\int_{\phi_{t}(\Omega)}\left[\frac{\partial g}{\partial t}+\nabla \cdot(g f)\right] d x_{1} \ldots d x_{d}
$$

## CHAPTER 2

## Existence, uniqueness, and regularity in the Lipschitz case

### 2.1. Banach fixed point theorem

Definition 2.1 (Contraction). Let $(X, d)$ be a metric space. A mapping $F: X \rightarrow X$ is a contraction if there exists $0<\lambda<1$ such that

$$
d(F(x), F(y)) \leq \lambda d(x, y)
$$

for all $x, y \in X$.
Theorem 2.2 (Banach fixed point theorem). Let $(X, d)$ be a complete metric space (i.e., every Cauchy sequence of elements of $X$ is convergent) and let $F: X \rightarrow X$ be a contraction. Then there exists a unique $x \in X$ such that

$$
F(x)=x
$$

### 2.2. Gronwall's lemma

Lemma 2.3 (Gronwall's lemma). Let $I=[0, T]$ and let $\phi \in \mathcal{C}^{0}(I)$. If there exist two constants $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}, \beta \geq 0$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(t) \leq \alpha+\beta \int_{0}^{t} \phi(s) \mathrm{d} s \quad \text { for all } t \in I \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

then

$$
\phi(t) \leq \alpha e^{\beta t} \quad \text { for all } t \in I
$$

Proof. Let $\varphi: I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be the function

$$
\varphi(t):=\alpha+\beta \int_{0}^{t} \phi(s) \mathrm{d} s
$$

Since $\phi \in \mathcal{C}^{0}$, we conclude that $\varphi \in \mathcal{C}^{1}$, and

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} \varphi}{\mathrm{~d} t}=\beta \phi(t) \quad \text { for all } t \in I
$$

By using (2.1), it follows that

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} \varphi}{\mathrm{~d} t} \leq \beta \varphi
$$

Let $\psi(t):=\exp (-\beta t) \varphi(t)$ for $t \in I$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \psi}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =-\beta e^{-\beta t} \varphi(t)+e^{-\beta t} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \varphi}{\mathrm{~d} t} \\
& =e^{-\beta t}\left(-\beta \varphi(t)+\frac{\mathrm{d} \varphi}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right) \leq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Since $\psi(0)=\varphi(0)=\alpha$, we have $\psi(t) \leq \alpha$ for $t \in I$, and hence

$$
\varphi(t) \leq \alpha e^{\beta t}
$$

which implies that $\phi(t) \leq \varphi(t) \leq \alpha e^{\beta t}$ for all $t \in I$.

### 2.3. Cauchy-Lipschitz theorem

Let $I=[0, T]$, let $d$ be a positive integer, and let $f: I \times \mathbb{R}^{d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$. Suppose that $f \in \mathcal{C}^{0}\left(I \times \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$.

Definition 2.4 (Lipschitz condition). If there exists a constant $C_{f} \geq 0$ such that, for any $x_{1}, x_{2} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ and any $t \in I$, the following inequality holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f\left(t, x_{1}\right)-f\left(t, x_{2}\right)\right| \leq C_{f}\left|x_{1}-x_{2}\right| \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

then we say that $f$ satisfies a Lipschitz condition on I. The constant $C_{f}$ is called the Lipschitz constant for $f$.

Theorem 2.5 (Cauchy-Lipschitz theorem). Consider the initial value problem

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =f(t, x), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{2.3}\\
x(0) & =x_{0}, \quad x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
\end{align*}\right.
$$

If $f \in \mathcal{C}^{0}\left(I \times \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$ satisfies the Lipschitz condition 2.2) on $[0, T]$, then there exists a unique solution $x \in \mathcal{C}^{1}(I)$ to 2.3 on $[0, T]$.

Proof. By 2.3), we have

$$
x(t)=x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} f(s, x(s)) \mathrm{d} s, \quad \forall t \in[0, T]
$$

Define the functional $F: \mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$ by

$$
F(y):=x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} f(s, y(s)) \mathrm{d} s
$$

For $y \in \mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$, defined the norm of $y$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\|y\|:=\sup _{t \in[0, T]}\left\{|y(t)| e^{-C_{f} t}\right\} \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $C_{f}$ is the Lipschitz constant for $f$. It is easy to prove that 2.4 is equivalent to the usual norm $\sup _{t \in[0, T]}|y(t)|$ and hence, $\mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$ equipped with 2.4 is complete.

With (2.4), we compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|F\left[y_{1}\right]-F\left[y_{2}\right]\right\| & =\sup _{t \in[0, T]}\left|F\left[y_{1}\right](t)-F\left[y_{2}\right](t)\right| e^{-C_{f} t} \\
& \leq \sup _{t \in[0, T]} e^{-C_{f} t} \int_{0}^{t}\left|f\left(s, y_{1}(s)\right)-f\left(s, y_{2}(s)\right)\right| \mathrm{d} s \\
& \leq \sup _{t \in[0, T]} e^{-C_{f} t} C_{f} \int_{0}^{t}\left|y_{1}(s)-y_{2}(s)\right| \mathrm{d} s \\
& \leq \sup _{t \in[0, T]} e^{-C_{f} t} C_{f} \int_{0}^{t} e^{C_{f} s} e^{-C_{f} s}\left|y_{1}(s)-y_{2}(s)\right| \mathrm{d} s \\
& \leq \sup _{t \in[0, T]}\left\{e^{-C_{f} t} C_{f} \int_{0}^{t} e^{C_{f} s} \mathrm{~d} s\right\}\left\|y_{1}-y_{2}\right\| \\
& \leq\left(1-e^{-C_{f} T}\right)\left\|y_{1}-y_{2}\right\|
\end{aligned}
$$

By Banach fixed point theorem in a complete metric space (Theorem 2.2), there exists a unique $y \in \mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$ such that $F(y)=y$. The Picard iteration

$$
y^{(n+1)}=F\left[y^{(n)}\right]
$$

is a Cauchy sequence and converges to the unique fixed point $y$. Therefore, there exists a unique solution to 2.3 .

REMARK 2.6. Theorem 2.5 holds true if $\mathbb{R}^{d}$ is replaced with a Banach space (a complete normed vector space). The proof is the same.

If $f$ is continuous, there is no guarantee that the initial value problem 2.3 possesses a unique solution.

Example 2.7. Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=x^{\frac{2}{3}}, \quad x(0)=0 \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then there are two solutions to (2.5) given by $x_{1}(t)=\frac{t^{3}}{27}$ and $x_{2}(t)=0$.
Theorem 2.8 (Cauchy-Peano existence theorem). If $f$ is continuous, then 2.3 admits a solution $x(t)$ that is, at least, defined for small $t$.

This theorem can be proved by using the Arzela-Ascoli theorem.
Definition 2.9 (Equicontinuity). A family of functions $\mathcal{F}$ is said to be equicontinuous on $[a, b]$ if for any given $\epsilon>0$, there exists $\delta>0$ such that

$$
|f(t)-f(s)|<\epsilon
$$

whenever $|t-s|<\delta$ for every function $f \in \mathcal{F}$ and $t, s \in[a, b]$.
Definition 2.10 (Uniform boundedness). A family of continuous functions $\mathcal{F}$ on $[a, b]$ is uniformly bounded if there exists a positive number $M$ such that $|f(t)| \leq M$ for every function $f \in \mathcal{F}$ and $t \in[a, b]$.

Theorem 2.11 (Arzela-Ascoli). Suppose that the sequence of functions $\left\{f_{n}(t)\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ on $[a, b]$ is uniformly bounded and equicontinuous, then there exists a subsequence $\left\{f_{n_{k}}(t)\right\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ that is uniformly convergent on $[a, b]$.

Example 2.12. Consider

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=x^{2}, \quad x(0)=x_{0} \neq 0
$$

By separation of variables, we obtain

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{x^{2}}=\mathrm{d} t
$$

Thus,

$$
-\frac{1}{x}=\int \frac{\mathrm{d} x}{x^{2}}=t+C
$$

and hence,

$$
x=-\frac{1}{t+C}
$$

Since $x(0)=x_{0}$,

$$
x(t)=\frac{x_{0}}{1-x_{0} t}
$$

If $x_{0}>0, x(t)$ blows up when $t \rightarrow \frac{1}{x_{0}}$ from below. If $x_{0}<0$, the singularity is in the past $(t<0)$. The only solution defined for all positive and negative $t$ is the constant solution $x(t)=0$, corresponding to $x_{0}=0$.

REMARK 2.13 (Local existence and uniqueness theorem). If $f(t, x)$ satisfies a Lipschitz condition in a bounded domain, then a unique solution exists in a limited region.

Theorem 2.14. Assume that $f$ is continuous and satisfies the Lipschitz condition in the closed domain $K:=\{|x| \leq k\}$ and $t \in[0, T]$,

$$
\left|f\left(t, x_{1}\right)-f\left(t, x_{2}\right)\right| \leq C_{f}\left|x_{1}-x_{2}\right|, \quad \text { for all } x, y \in K, t \in[0, T]
$$

then the equation

$$
\left\{\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =f(t, x), \quad t \in[0, T] \\
x(0) & =x_{0}, \quad x_{0} \in K
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

has a unique solution in $t \in\left[0, \min \left\{T, \frac{k}{M}\right\}\right]$, where

$$
M:=\sup _{x \in K, t \in[0, T]}|f(t, x)|
$$

Example 2.15. The initial value problem

$$
\left\{\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =1+x^{2}, \quad t \in[0,1] \\
x(0) & =0
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

in the region $\{(x, t):|x| \leq 1,0 \leq t \leq 1\}$ has a unique solution for $0 \leq t \leq 1 / 2$.
Now we turn to the continuity of the solution of 2.3 .
Theorem 2.16 (Continuity with respect to the initial data). Suppose that $f$ satisfies the Lipschitz condition (2.2). Let $x_{1}(t)$ and $x_{2}(t)$ be the solutions of (2.3) corresponding to the initial data $x_{1}(0)$ and $x_{2}(0)$, respectively. Then we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x_{1}(t)-x_{2}(t)\right| \leq e^{C_{f} t}\left|x_{1}(0)-x_{2}(0)\right| \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T] . \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left|x_{1}(t)-x_{2}(t)\right|^{2} & =2\left(f\left(t, x_{1}(t)\right)-f\left(t, x_{2}(t)\right)\right)\left(x_{1}(t)-x_{2}(t)\right) \\
& \leq 2 C_{f}\left|x_{1}(t)-x_{2}(t)\right|^{2}, \quad t \in[0, T]
\end{aligned}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left(\left|x_{1}(t)-x_{2}(t)\right|^{2} e^{-2 C_{f} t}\right) \leq 0 \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating 2.7 from 0 to $t$ gives

$$
\left|x_{1}(t)-x_{2}(t)\right|^{2} e^{-2 C_{f} t} \leq\left|x_{1}(0)-x_{2}(0)\right|^{2}
$$

or equivalently,

$$
\left|x_{1}(t)-x_{2}(t)\right| \leq\left|x_{1}(0)-x_{2}(0)\right| e^{C_{f} t}
$$

which yields the desired inequality.

Next we discuss the differentiability of the solution of 2.3 with respect to the initial data.
Formally, taking the derivative of the solution $x$ of 2.3 with respect to the initial data, we obtain that $\partial x(t) / \partial x_{0}$ is the solution of the linear equation

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t} \frac{\partial x(t)}{\partial x_{0}} & =\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, x(t)) \frac{\partial x(t)}{\partial x_{0}}  \tag{2.8}\\
\frac{\partial x(t)}{\partial x_{0}} & =1
\end{align*}\right.
$$

Theorem 2.17. Suppose that $f$ is of class $\mathcal{C}^{1}$. Then $x_{0} \mapsto x(t)$ is differentiable and $\partial x(t) / \partial x_{0}$ is the unique solution of the linear equation (2.8).

Proof. Let $\Delta x\left(t, x_{0}, h\right):=x\left(t, x_{0}+h\right)-x\left(t, x_{0}\right)$ be the difference quotient. By using the mean-value theorem, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta x\left(t, x_{0}, h\right) & =h+\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}+h\right)\right)-f\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)\right)\right) \mathrm{d} s \\
& =h+\int_{0}^{t}\left(f\left(s, x\left(t, x_{0}\right)+\Delta x\left(s, x_{0}, h\right)\right)-f\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)\right)\right) \mathrm{d} s \\
& =h+\int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)+\tau \Delta x\right) \Delta x \mathrm{~d} s
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\tau=\tau\left(s, x_{0}, h\right) \in[0,1]$. Since there exists a positive constant $M$ such that $\left|\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right|<M$, it holds that

$$
|\Delta x| \leq|h|+M \int_{0}^{t}\left|\Delta x\left(s, x_{0}, h\right)\right| \mathrm{d} s
$$

By Gronwall's lemma (Lemma 2.3,

$$
\left|\Delta x\left(t, x_{0}, h\right)\right| \leq|h| e^{M T}
$$

Let $v(t)$ be the unique solution of 2.8. We compute

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\Delta x\left(t, x_{0}, h\right)}{h}-v(t)= & \int_{0}^{t}\left(\frac{f\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}+h\right)\right)-f\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)\right)}{h}-\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)\right) v(s)\right) \mathrm{d} s \\
= & \int_{0}^{t} \frac{\Delta x\left(s, x_{0}, h\right)}{h}\left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)+\tau \Delta x\left(s, x_{0}, h\right)\right)-\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)\right)\right] \mathrm{d} s \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(s, x\left(s, x_{0}\right)\right)\left(\frac{\Delta x\left(s, x_{0}, h\right)}{h}-v(s)\right) \mathrm{d} s
\end{aligned}
$$

By using the uniform continuity of $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}$, we have that for any $\epsilon>0$ there exists $h_{0}>0$ such that, for any $|h| \leq h_{0}$, the first term on the right-hand side is of order $O(\epsilon)$. Then, again by Gronwall's lemma,

$$
\left|\frac{\Delta x\left(t, x_{0}, h\right)}{h}-v\right| \leq \epsilon M T e^{M T}
$$

for $|h|$ small enough, which proves that $x_{0} \mapsto x(t)$ is differentiable and its derivative is given by

$$
\frac{\partial x}{\partial x_{0}}=v
$$

where $v$ is the solution of 2.8 .

### 2.4. Stability

THEOREM 2.18 (Strong continuity theorem). Let

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t}=f(t, x) \quad \text { and } \quad \frac{\mathrm{d} y}{\mathrm{~d} t}=g(t, y)
$$

be two ODEs on $[0, T]$. If $f$ satisfies the Lipschitz condition (2.2) on $[0, T]$ and there exists $\epsilon>0$ such that, for any $x \in \mathbb{R}^{d}, t \in[0, T]$,

$$
|f(t, x)-g(t, x)| \leq \epsilon
$$

then the following inequality holds:

$$
|x(t)-y(t)| \leq|x(0)-y(0)| e^{C_{f} t}+\frac{\epsilon}{C_{f}}\left(e^{C_{f} t}-1\right), \quad t \in[0, T]
$$

REmARK 2.19. The function $g$ may not satisfy a Lipschitz condition.

Proof. Since

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}|x(t)-y(t)|^{2} & =2(f(t, x(t))-g(t, y(t)))(x(t)-y(t)) \\
& =2(f(t, x(t))-f(t, y(t)))(x(t)-y(t))+2(f(t, y(t))-g(t, y(t)))(x(t)-y(t))
\end{aligned}
$$

we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}|x(t)-y(t)|^{2} & \left.\leq\left|\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\right| x(t)-\left.y(t)\right|^{2} \right\rvert\, \\
& \leq 2|f(t, x(t))-f(t, y(t))||x(t)-y(t)|+2|f(t, y(t))-g(t, y(t))||x(t)-y(t)| \\
& \leq 2 C_{f}|x(t)-y(t)|^{2}+2 \epsilon|x(t)-y(t)| \\
& \leq 2 C_{f}|x(t)-y(t)|^{2}+2 \epsilon \sqrt{|x(t)-y(t)|^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

If we denote by $h(t):=|x(t)-y(t)|^{2}$, then

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d} h}{\mathrm{~d} t} \leq 2 C_{f} h+2 \epsilon \sqrt{h}
$$

Consider the following initial value problem:

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} u}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =2 C_{f} u+2 \epsilon \sqrt{u}  \tag{2.9}\\
u(0) & =|x(0)-y(0)|^{2}
\end{align*}\right.
$$

Since $C_{f}>0, u(0) \geq 0$, it follows that $\frac{\mathrm{d} u}{\mathrm{~d} t}$ is always non-negative when $t \geq 0$, and hence $u$ is increasing.

Let $z(t):=\sqrt{u(t)}$ and suppose that $h(0)>0$. Then 2.9) is equivalent to

$$
\left\{\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d} z}{\mathrm{~d} t}-C_{f} z & =\epsilon, \quad t \in[0, T] \\
z(0) & =\sqrt{u(0)}
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

This gives the solution of (2.4):

$$
\sqrt{u(t)}=z(t)=\sqrt{u(0)} e^{C_{f} t}+\frac{\epsilon}{C_{f}}\left(e^{C_{f} t}-1\right)
$$

Moreover,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}(h(t)-u(t)) & \leq 2 C_{f}(h(t)-u(t))+2 \epsilon(\sqrt{h(t)}-\sqrt{u(t)}) \\
& =2 C_{f}(h(t)-u(t))+2 \epsilon \frac{h(t)-u(t)}{\sqrt{h(t)}+\sqrt{u(t)}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Suppose that there exists $t_{1}$ such that $h\left(t_{1}\right)>u\left(t_{1}\right)$. Let $t_{0}:=\sup \left\{t: 0 \leq t \leq t_{1}, h(t) \leq u(t)\right\}$. By the continuity of $h$ and $u$, we must have $h\left(t_{0}\right)=u\left(t_{0}\right)$. Since $u\left(t_{0}\right)>0$, we obtain for $t_{0} \leq t \leq t_{1}$, that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}(h(t)-u(t)) & \leq 2 C_{f}(h(t)-u(t))+2 \epsilon \frac{h(t)-u(t)}{\sqrt{u(0)}} \\
& =\left(2 C_{f}+\frac{2 \epsilon}{\sqrt{u(0)}}\right)(h(t)-u(t))
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence,

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left((h(t)-u(t)) \exp \left(-2 C_{f}+\frac{2 \epsilon}{\sqrt{u(0)}}\right) t\right) \leq 0
$$

Integrating from $t_{0}$ to $t$ gives $h(t) \leq u(t)$ for $t_{0} \leq t \leq t_{1}$, which is a contradiction to $h\left(t_{1}\right)>u\left(t_{1}\right)$.
Therefore, it follows that for all $t \in[0, T]$,

$$
\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{~d} t}\left((h(t)-u(t)) \exp \left(-2 C_{f}+\frac{2 \epsilon}{\sqrt{u(0)}}\right) t\right) \leq 0
$$

By integrating now the last inequality from 0 to $t$, we obtain

$$
(h(t)-u(t)) \exp \left(-2 C_{f}+\frac{2 \epsilon}{\sqrt{u(0)}} t\right) \leq h(0)-u(0)
$$

Since $u(0)=h(0)$, we have $h(t) \leq u(t)$ for $t \in[0, T]$, and hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
|x(t)-y(t)| & \leq \sqrt{u(t)} \\
& =\sqrt{u(0)} e^{C_{f} t}+\frac{\epsilon}{C_{f}}\left(e^{C_{f} t}-1\right) \\
& =\sqrt{h(0)} e^{C_{f} t}+\frac{\epsilon}{C_{f}}\left(e^{C_{f} t}-1\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, the desired estimate

$$
|x(t)-y(t)| \leq|x(0)-y(0)| e^{C_{f} t}+\frac{\epsilon}{C_{f}}\left(e^{C_{f} t}-1\right)
$$

holds.
If $h(0)=0$, then, instead of 2.9 , we consider the following equation:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\mathrm{d} u_{n}}{\mathrm{~d} t}=2 C_{f} u_{n}+2 \epsilon \sqrt{u_{n}}, \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{2.10}\\
u_{n}(0)=\frac{1}{n}
\end{array}\right.
$$

which, analogously to $(2.9)$, has the explicit solution

$$
u_{n}(t)=\left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} e^{C_{f} t}+\frac{\epsilon}{C_{f}}\left(e^{C_{f} t}-1\right)\right]^{2}
$$

We only need to prove that for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
h(t) \leq u_{n}(t) \tag{2.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

holds for $t \in[0, T]$. Then by letting $n \rightarrow+\infty, u_{n} \rightarrow u$, where $u$ is the solution to $(2.9)$, and hence $h(t) \leq u(t)$.

Inequality 2.11 can be proved by contradiction. Suppose that there exists $t_{1}>0$ such that $h\left(t_{1}\right)>u_{n}\left(t_{1}\right)$. Let $t_{0}$ be the largest $t$ in the interval $0<t \leq t_{1}$ such that $h\left(t_{0}\right) \leq u_{n}\left(t_{0}\right)$. By the continuity of $h(t)$ and $u_{n}(t)$, we assert that

$$
h\left(t_{0}\right)=u_{n}\left(t_{0}\right)>0
$$

and $h(t)>u_{n}(t)$ on $\left(t_{0}, t_{0}+\epsilon\right)$, a small right-neighborhood of $t_{0}$. But this is impossible according to the discussion in the case where $h(0)>0$ by replacing 0 by $t_{0}$. The proof of the theorem is now complete.

### 2.5. Regularity

Theorem 2.20. If $f \in \mathcal{C}^{n}$ for $n \geq 0$, then the solution $x$ of 2.3 is of class $\mathcal{C}^{n+1}$.
Proof. The proof is by induction, the case $n=0$ being clear. If $f \in \mathcal{C}^{n}$ then $x$ is at least of class $\mathcal{C}^{n}$, by the inductive assumption. Then the function $t \mapsto f(t, x(t))=d x(t) / d t$ is also of class $\mathcal{C}^{n}$. The function $x(t)$ is then of class $\mathcal{C}^{n+1}$.

REMARK 2.21. If $f$ is a real analytic function, then it can be proved that $x$ is also real analytic.
Problem 2.22 (Generalized Gronwall's inequality). Suppose $\phi(t)$ satisfies

$$
\phi(t) \leq \alpha(t)+\int_{0}^{t} \beta(s) \phi(s) d s \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T]
$$

with $\alpha(t) \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\beta(t) \geq 0$.
(i) Prove that

$$
\phi(t) \leq \alpha(t)+\int_{0}^{t} \alpha(s) \beta(s) e^{\int_{s}^{t} \beta(\tau) d \tau} d s
$$

(ii) Prove that, if in addition $\alpha(s) \leq \alpha(t)$ for $s \leq t$, then

$$
\phi(t) \leq \alpha(t) e^{\int_{0}^{t} \beta(s) d s}, \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T]
$$

Problem 2.23. Let $d=1$ and let $f(t, x)$ be a continuous function satisfying the Lipschitz condition (2.2). Let $M:=\sup _{x \in \mathbb{R}, t \in[0, T]}|f(t, x)|$. Let $x$ be the solution to 2.3) and let $x^{(n)}$ be the $n$th term in its Picard's approximation. Prove that

$$
\left|x(t)-x^{(n)}(t)\right| \leq \frac{M C_{f}^{n}}{(n+1)!} t^{n+1} \quad \text { for } t \in[0, T]
$$

Problem 2.24. State and prove a uniqueness theorem for the differential equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}=f\left(t, x, \frac{d x}{d t}\right), \quad t \in[0, T] \\
x(0)=x_{0}, \quad \frac{d x}{d t}(0)=x_{0}^{\prime}, \quad x_{0}, x_{0}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{R}
\end{array}\right.
$$

## CHAPTER 3

## Linear systems

### 3.1. Exponential of a matrix

Let $\mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ be the vector space of $d \times d$ matrices with entries in $\mathbb{C}$. Let $G L_{d}(\mathbb{C}) \subset \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ be the group of invertible matrices.

Definition 3.1 (Matrix norm). The matrix norm of $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ is

$$
\|A\|=\max _{|y|=1}|A y|
$$

Lemma 3.2. The matrix norm has the following properties:
(i) $|A y| \leq\|A\||y|$ for all $y \in \mathbb{C}^{d}$;
(ii) $\|A+B\| \leq\|A\|+\|B\|$ for all $A, B \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$;
(iii) $\|A B\| \leq\|A\|\|B\|$ for all $A, B \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$.

Lemma 3.3 (Jordan-Chevalley decomposition). Let $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$. Then there exists $C \in$ $G L_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ such that $A$ has a unique decomposition

$$
C^{-1} A C=D+N
$$

where $D$ is diagonal, $N$ is nilpotent (i.e., $N^{d}=0$ ), and $N D=D N$.
We now define the exponential of a matrix.
Definition 3.4. For a matrix $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$, we define

$$
e^{A}=\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{A^{n}}{n!}
$$

We list some properties of the exponential of a matrix.
Lemma 3.5. The exponential of a matrix has the following properties:
(i) (exponential of the sum) Let $A, B \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$. If $A B=B A$, then $e^{A+B}=e^{A} e^{B}$;
(ii) (conjugation and exponentiation) Let $A, B \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ and $C \in G L_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ be such that $A=$ $C^{-1} B C$. Then we have

$$
e^{A}=C^{-1} e^{B} C
$$

In fact,

$$
e^{A}=\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{A^{n}}{n!}=\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{\left(C^{-1} B C\right)^{n}}{n!}=\sum_{n \geq 0} \frac{C^{-1} B^{n} C}{n!}=C^{-1} e^{B} C
$$

(iii) (exponential of a diagonalizable matrix) If $A$ is a diagonalizable matrix of the form

$$
A=C^{-1}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\lambda_{1} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & \lambda_{d}
\end{array}\right) C
$$

where $\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{d} \in \mathbb{C}$ and $C \in G L_{d}(\mathbb{C})$, then

$$
e^{A}=C^{-1}\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
e^{\lambda_{1}} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & e^{\lambda_{d}}
\end{array}\right) C
$$

(iv) (exponential of a block matrix) Let $A_{j} \in \mathbb{M}_{h_{j}}(\mathbb{C})$ for $j=1, \ldots, p$. Let $A$ be a block matrix of the form

$$
A=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
A_{1} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & A_{p}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Then

$$
e^{A}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
e^{A_{1}} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & e^{A_{p}}
\end{array}\right)
$$

(v) (derivative) Let $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$. We have

$$
\frac{d}{d t} e^{t A}=A e^{t A}=e^{t A} A
$$

### 3.2. Linear systems with constant coefficients

Let $\left.A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})\right)$ be independent of $t$. Let $f \in \mathcal{C}^{0}([0, T])$. Consider the following linear ODE with constant coefficients:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=A x(t)+f(t), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{3.1}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Since

$$
|A(x-y)| \leq\|A\||x-y| \quad \text { for all } x, y \in \mathbb{C}^{d}
$$

by the Cauchy-Lipschitz theorem there exists a unique solution $x$ to (3.1). The system of equations (3.1) is an autonomous system.

If $d=1$ (i.e., $A=a \in \mathbb{C}$ ), then by the method of integrating factors,

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=e^{a t} x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} e^{a(t-s)} f(s) d s \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the general case $(d \geq 1)$, if $f=0$, then, from Lemma 3.5 (v), it follows that the solution $x$ of (3.1) is $x(t)=e^{t A} x_{0}$.

For an arbitrary $f$, we have

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left(e^{-t A} x\right)=e^{-t A} f(t)
$$

and hence the solution $x(t)$ of 3.1 is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=e^{t A} x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} e^{(t-s) A} f(s) d s \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Observe that the solution of 3.1 has been reduced in 3.3 to matrix calculations and integration.
Example 3.6. An important class of linear system with constant coefficients are those that can be converted into diagonal form. Suppose that we are given a system $d x / d t=A x$ such that the eigenvalues $\lambda_{j}$ of $A$ are distinct. Then we can find an invertible matrix $C$ such that $C^{-1} A C$ is diagonal. If we choose a set of coordinates $y=C^{-1} x$, then in the new coordinates the equation becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d y}{d t}=C^{-1} A C y=D y, \quad y(0)=y_{0} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

By construction, $D$ in 3.4) is diagonal and

$$
y(t)=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
e^{\lambda_{1} t} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & e^{\lambda_{d} t}
\end{array}\right) y_{0}
$$

EXAMPle 3.7. Consider 3.1) with $d=2, A=\left(\begin{array}{ll}0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0\end{array}\right)$. Then since $A^{2}=0$ and hence $e^{t A}=\left(\begin{array}{ll}1 & t \\ 0 & 1\end{array}\right)$, the solution $x(t)$ is given by

$$
x(t)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
1 & t \\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right) x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
1 & t-s \\
0 & 1
\end{array}\right) f(s) d s
$$

EXAMPle 3.8. Consider (3.1) with $d=2, A=\left(\begin{array}{cc}0 & \omega \\ -\omega & 0\end{array}\right)$ for some $\omega \in \mathbb{R}, \omega \neq 0$. Then

$$
e^{t A}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \omega t & \sin \omega t \\
-\sin \omega t & \cos \omega t
\end{array}\right)
$$

This expression for $e^{t A}$ can be verified by differentiation:

$$
\frac{d}{d t} e^{t A}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
-\omega \sin \omega t & \omega \cos \omega t \\
-\omega \cos \omega t & -\omega \sin \omega t
\end{array}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
0 & \omega \\
-\omega & 0
\end{array}\right)\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \omega t & \sin \omega t \\
-\sin \omega t & \cos \omega t
\end{array}\right)=A e^{t A}
$$

The solution $x(t)$ to (3.1) is then given by

$$
x(t)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \omega t & \sin \omega t \\
-\sin \omega t & \cos \omega t
\end{array}\right) x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\cos \omega(t-s) & \sin \omega(t-s) \\
-\sin \omega(t-s) & \cos \omega(t-s)
\end{array}\right) f(s) d s
$$

### 3.3. Linear system with non-constant real coefficients

3.3.1. The homogeneous case. Let $\mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})$ be the vector space of $d \times d$ matrices with entries in $\mathbb{R}$.

Proposition 3.9. Let $A:[0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})$ be continuous. The set $S$ of solutions of $d x / d t=$ $A(t) x$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
S=\left\{x \in \mathcal{C}^{1}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right): x \text { satisfies } \frac{d x}{d t}=A(t) x\right\} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a linear subspace of $\mathcal{C}^{1}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$ of dimension $d$.
Proof. If $x, y \in S$, then, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}, \alpha x+\beta y \in \mathcal{C}^{1}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$ is also a solution. Then $S$ is a linear subspace of $\mathcal{C}^{1}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$. We show that the dimension of $S$ is $d$. Let the mapping $F: S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$ be defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
F[x]=x\left(t_{0}\right) \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some $t_{0} \in[0, T]$. Then $F$ is linear: $F[\alpha x+\beta y]=\alpha x\left(t_{0}\right)+\beta y\left(t_{0}\right)=\alpha F[x]+\beta F[y] . \quad F$ is injective, i.e., $F[x]=0$ implies that $x=0$. In fact, $x$ solves $\frac{d x}{d t}=A(t) x(t)$ with the initial condition $x\left(t_{0}\right)=0$. The solution to this problem is unique (by the Cauchy-Lipschitz theorem) and 0 is a solution. Then $x=0$. Finally, $F$ is surjective because for any $x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ the equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=A(t) x(t), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{3.7}\\
x\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}
\end{array}\right.
$$

has a solution $x \in \mathcal{C}^{1}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$.

Proposition 3.10. Let $S$ be defined by (3.5) and let $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \in S$. The following statements are equivalent:
(i) $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ is a basis of $S$;
(ii) $\operatorname{det}\left[x_{1}(t), \ldots, x_{d}(t)\right] \neq 0$ for all $t \in[0, T]$.
(iii) $\operatorname{det}\left[x_{1}\left(t_{0}\right), \ldots, x_{d}\left(t_{0}\right)\right] \neq 0$ for some $t_{0} \in[0, T]$.

Here, det denotes the determinant of a matrix and $\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right]$ is the $d \times d$ matrix with columns $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$.

Proof. It is clear that (i) is equivalent to (ii). To see that (i) implies (iii), let $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ be a basis of $S$. Then $\left\{F\left[x_{1}\right], \ldots, F\left[x_{d}\right]\right\}$ forms a basis of $\mathbb{R}^{d}$, where the isomorphism $F$ relative to $t_{0}$ is defined by (3.6). Next let us check that (iii) implies (i). Let $t_{0}$ be such that (iii) holds and let $F: S \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{d}$ be the isomorphism relative to $t_{0}$ defined by (3.6). Then the inverse $F^{-1}: \mathbb{R}^{d} \rightarrow S$ is also an isomorphism. It follows that $x_{1}=F^{-1}\left[x_{1}\left(t_{0}\right)\right], \ldots, x_{d}=F^{-1}\left[x_{d}\left(t_{0}\right)\right]$ is a basis of $S$.

Definition 3.11 (Fundamental matrix). If one of the three equivalent conditions of Proposition 3.10 holds, then the functions $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ are called a fundamental system of solutions of the differential equation $\frac{d x}{d t}=A(t) x$. The matrix $X=\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right]$ is then called a fundamental matrix of the equation.

We now introduce the Wronskian determinant.
Definition 3.12 (Wronskian determinant). Let $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \in S$. The Wronskian determinant $w \in \mathcal{C}^{1}([0, T] ; \mathbb{R})$ of $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ is defined by

$$
w(t)=\operatorname{det}\left[x_{1}(t), \ldots, x_{d}(t)\right]
$$

ThEOREM 3.13. Let $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \in S$ and let $w \in \mathcal{C}^{1}([0, T] ; \mathbb{R})$ be the Wronskian determinant of $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$. Then $w$ solves the differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d w}{d t}=(\operatorname{tr} A(t)) w \quad \text { for } t \in[0, T] \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here, tr denotes the trace of a matrix.
Proof. If $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ are linearly dependent, then $w=0$ and 3.8 trivially holds. Suppose that $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ are linearly independent, i.e., $w(t) \neq 0$ for all $t \in[0, T]$.

Let $X:[0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})$ be the fundamental matrix having as columns the solutions $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$, i.e.,

$$
X(t)=\left(x_{i j}(t)\right)_{i, j=1, \ldots, d}, \quad t \in[0, T]
$$

where $x_{j}=\left(x_{1 j}, \ldots, x_{d j}\right)^{\top}$ for $j=1, \ldots, d$.
Let $z_{j}$ be the solution of

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d z_{j}}{d t}=A(t) z_{j}(t) \\
z_{j}\left(t_{0}\right)=e_{j}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $\left\{e_{j}\right\}_{j=1, \ldots, d}$ is the standard unit orthonormal basis in $\mathbb{R}^{d}$.
Then $\left\{z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right\}$ is a basis of the space of solutions to $d z / d t=A z$. Moreover, there exists $C \in G L_{d}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$ such that

$$
X(t)=C Z(t), \quad t \in[0, T]
$$

where $Z=\left[z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right]$.
Let $v(t):=\operatorname{det} Z(t)$. Then $v$ solves

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)=\operatorname{tr} A\left(t_{0}\right)
$$

In fact, by the definition of the determinant of a matrix, we have

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}(t)=\frac{d}{d t} \sum_{\sigma \in S_{d}}(-1)^{\operatorname{sgn} \sigma} \prod_{i=1}^{d} z_{i \sigma(i)}(t)=\sum_{\sigma \in S_{d}}(-1)^{\operatorname{sgn} \sigma} \sum_{j=1}^{d} \frac{d}{d t} z_{j \sigma(j)}(t) \prod_{i \neq j} z_{i \sigma(i)}(t)
$$

where $S_{d}$ is the set of all permutations of the $d$ elements $\{1,2, \ldots, d\}$ and $\operatorname{sgn} \sigma$ is the signature of the permutation $\sigma$. Note that

$$
\prod_{i \neq j} z_{i \sigma(i)}\left(t_{0}\right)=0 \quad \text { unless } \sigma=\text { identity }
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d z_{j j}}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right) & =\left(A\left(t_{0}\right) z_{j}\left(t_{0}\right)\right)_{j} \\
& =\sum_{h=1}^{d} a_{j h}\left(t_{0}\right) z_{h j}\left(t_{0}\right)=\sum_{h=1}^{d} a_{j h}\left(t_{0}\right) \delta_{h j}\left(t_{0}\right) \\
& =a_{j j}\left(t_{0}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore,

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)=\sum_{j=1}^{d} a_{j j}\left(t_{0}\right)=\operatorname{tr} A\left(t_{0}\right)
$$

Now the general result follows from the differentiation of the following identity:

$$
w=\operatorname{det} X=\operatorname{det}(C Z)=(\operatorname{det} C) \operatorname{det} Z=(\operatorname{det} C) v
$$

In fact, we have

$$
\frac{d w}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)=(\operatorname{det} C) \frac{d v}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)=(\operatorname{det} C) \operatorname{tr} A\left(t_{0}\right)
$$

Therefore,

$$
\frac{d w}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)=\operatorname{tr} A\left(t_{0}\right) w\left(t_{0}\right)
$$

since $v\left(t_{0}\right)=1$.
Remark 3.14. Let $t_{0} \in[0, T]$. From (3.8), it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(t)=w\left(t_{0}\right) e^{\int_{t_{0}}^{t} \operatorname{tr} A(s) d s} \quad \text { for } t \in[0, T] \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is known as Abel's identity or Liouville's formula. Identity (3.9) shows that it suffices to check that the determinant of the fundamental matrix is nonzero for one $t_{0} \in[0, T]$.
3.3.2. The inhomogeneous case. Consider the inhomogeneous linear differential equation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\frac{d x}{d t}=A(t) x+f(t)\right. \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $A(t) \in \mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})\right)$ and $f \in \mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$.
Let $X$ be a fundamental matrix for the homogeneous equation $d x(t) / d t=A(t) x(t)$, i.e.,

$$
\frac{d X}{d t}=A X \quad \text { and } \quad \operatorname{det} X \neq 0 \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T]
$$

Then, any solution $x$ to the homogeneous equation is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=X(t) c, \quad t \in[0, T] \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some (column) vector $c \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$.
By using the method of integrating factors, we look for a solution to 3.10 of the form 3.11) with $c \in \mathcal{C}^{1}\left([0, T] ; \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$. In this case, we have

$$
\frac{d x}{d t}=\frac{d X}{d t} c+X \frac{d c}{d t}=A X c+X \frac{d c}{d t}=A x+X \frac{d c}{d t}
$$

which implies $X \frac{d c}{d t}=f(t)$. Since $X$ is invertible, we obtain

$$
\frac{d c}{d t}=X^{-1} f(t)
$$

Therefore, we find

$$
c(t)=c_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} X(s)^{-1} f(s) d s
$$

for some $c_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$.

Theorem 3.15. Let $X$ be a fundamental matrix for the homogeneous equation $d x / d t=A x$. Then, for all $c_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$, the function

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=X(t)\left(c_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} X(s)^{-1} f(s) d s\right) \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

is a solution to (3.10). Moreover, any solution to (3.10) is of the form (3.12) for some $c_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$.
Proof. The first statement is already proved. To prove the second statement, let $x_{2}$ be a solution to (3.10). Since

$$
\frac{d}{d t}\left(x_{2}-x(t)\right)=A\left(x_{2}-x\right)
$$

where $x$ is given by 3.12 , we get $x_{2}-x=X c_{1}$ for some $c_{1} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$ and the claim follows.

Formula 3.12 is called Duhamel's formula.

### 3.4. Second order linear equations

Let $d=1$ and consider the following second order ODE:

$$
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}=f\left(t, x, \frac{d x}{d t}\right)
$$

for a given scalar function $f$. The above ODE is linear if $f$ is linear in $x$ and $d x / d t$, namely,

$$
f\left(t, x, \frac{d x}{d t}\right)=g(t)-p(t) \frac{d x}{d t}-q(t) x
$$

where $g, p, q$ are (scalar) functions of $t$ but do not depend on $x$. Then the ODE becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}+p(t) \frac{d x}{d t}+q(t) x=g(t) \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The initial value problem consists of (3.13) together with a pair of initial conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}, \quad \frac{d x}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)=x_{0}^{\prime}, \quad x_{0}, x_{0}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{R}^{d} \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second order ODE (3.13) is called homogeneous if $g=0$ and inhomogeneous otherwise. If $p(t)$ and $q(t)$ are constant, then 3.13 is called linear ODE with constant coefficients.

Suppose that

$$
\begin{equation*}
p, q \in \mathcal{C}^{0}([0, T]) \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

If the condition 3.15 fails, then the points at which either $p$ or $q$ fail to be continuous are called singular points. The following are important examples:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Bessel's equation: } p(t)=\frac{1}{t}, q(t)=1-\frac{\nu}{t^{2}}, \quad(\text { at } t=0) \\
& \text { Legendre's equation: } p(t)=\frac{2 t}{1-t^{2}}, q(t)=\frac{n(n+1)}{1-t^{2}}, n \in \mathbb{N} \quad(\text { at } t= \pm 1)
\end{aligned}
$$

THEOREM 3.16. Suppose that $p, q, g \in \mathcal{C}^{0}\left([0, T], \mathbb{R}^{d}\right)$. Then there exists a unique solution $x(t)$ on $[0, T]$ to (3.13) with the initial conditions (3.14).
3.4.1. Structure of the general solution. Here we discuss the structure of the general solution to the second order ODE (3.13).

First we consider the homogeneous case. We need the following results regarding the Wronskian determinant.

Definition 3.17. Two functions $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ on $[0, T]$ are called linearly independent if neither of them is a multiple of the other. Otherwise, they are called linearly dependent.

Proposition 3.18. Let $w$ be the Wronskian determinant given by

$$
w(t):=x_{1}(t) \frac{d x_{2}}{d t}(t)-x_{2}(t) \frac{d x_{1}}{d t}(t)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
x_{1} & x_{2} \\
\frac{d x_{1}}{d t} & \frac{d x_{2}}{d t}
\end{array}\right)
$$

If $w(t)$ is not zero at some $t_{0} \in[0, T]$, then $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ are linearly independent.
Proof. Let us prove that if $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ are linearly dependent, then $w(t)=0$ for all $t \in[0, T]$. Suppose that $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ are linearly dependent. Then, with respect to ( $\alpha_{1}, \alpha_{2}$ ), the following system:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\alpha_{1} x_{1}+\alpha_{2} x_{2}=0, \\
\alpha_{1} \frac{d x_{1}}{d t}+\alpha_{2} \frac{d x_{2}}{d t}=0,
\end{array} \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T]\right.
$$

has a non-trivial solution. Therefore,

$$
w(t)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{cc}
x_{1} & x_{2} \\
\frac{d x_{1}}{d t} & \frac{d x_{2}}{d t}
\end{array}\right)=0, \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T]
$$

This completes the proof.

Proposition 3.19. If $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ solve 3.13) on $[0, T]$ then $w(t)$ is either identically zero or not equal to zero at any point of $[0, T]$.

Proof. We have

$$
w^{\prime}(t)=x_{1} \frac{d^{2} x_{2}}{d t^{2}}-x_{2} \frac{d^{2} x_{1}}{d t^{2}}
$$

We also have, by the assumption that $x_{1}, x_{2}$ solve (3.13), that

$$
\frac{d^{2} x_{i}}{d t^{2}}=-p(t) \frac{d x_{i}}{d t}-q(t) x_{i}, \quad i=1,2
$$

So we get

$$
\frac{d w}{d t}=-p(t)\left(x_{1} \frac{d x_{2}}{d t}-\frac{d x_{1}}{d t} x_{2}\right)=-p(t) w(t)
$$

Therefore $w(t)=w\left(t_{0}\right) e^{-\int_{t_{0}}^{t} p(s) d s}$, which is either identically zero or never vanishes depending on $w\left(t_{0}\right)$.

Now we discuss the structure of the general solution to the homogeneous system.
Theorem 3.20. Suppose that $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ solve the equation (3.13) with $g=0$. Suppose also that $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ are linearly independent. Then the general solution is of the form $c_{1} x_{1}+c_{2} x_{2}$, where $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ are constant coefficients.

Proof. Let $\tilde{x}$ be an arbitrary solution with the initial condition $\tilde{x}\left(t_{0}\right)=\tilde{x}_{0}, d \tilde{x} / d t\left(t_{0}\right)=\tilde{x}_{0}^{\prime}$. Consider the system of equations for $\left(c_{1}, c_{2}\right)$

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
c_{1} x_{1}\left(t_{0}\right)+c_{2} x_{2}\left(t_{0}\right)=\tilde{x}_{0} \\
c_{1} \frac{d x_{1}}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)+c_{2} \frac{d x_{2}}{d t}\left(t_{0}\right)=\tilde{x}_{0}^{\prime}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Since $x_{1} \frac{d x_{2}}{d t}-x_{2} \frac{d x_{1}}{d t} \neq 0$ at $t=t_{0}$, there exists a unique nontrivial solution $\left(c_{1}, c_{2}\right)=\left(\tilde{c}_{1}, \tilde{c}_{2}\right)$ to the above system. Then, by the existence and uniqueness theorem for the initial value problem of the second order ODE, we conclude that $\tilde{c}_{1} x_{1}+\tilde{c}_{2} x_{2}=\tilde{x}$.
3.4.2. Linear $n$-th order ODE with constant coefficients. Here we discuss the approach to solving a linear $n$-th order ODE with constant coefficients. Consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{n} x}{d t^{n}}+a_{n-1} \frac{d^{n-1} x}{d t^{n-1}}+\ldots+a_{1} \frac{d x}{d t}+a_{0} x=0 \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $a_{i} \in \mathbb{R}$ for $i=0, \ldots, n-1$.
The general solution has the form

$$
x(t)=c_{1} x_{1}+\ldots+c_{n} x_{n}
$$

where $\left\{x_{i}\right\}_{i=1}^{n}$ is the set of linearly independent solutions (a fundamental set of solutions) and $c_{i}$ are constant coefficients.

Let $w(t)$ be the Wronskian determinant of the set $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$, i.e.,

$$
w(t)=\operatorname{det}\left[\begin{array}{cccc}
x_{1} & x_{2} & \cdots & x_{n} \\
\frac{d x_{1}}{d t} & & & \\
\vdots & & & \vdots \\
\frac{d^{n-1}}{d t^{n-1}} x_{1} & \frac{d^{n-1}}{d t^{n-1}} x_{2} & \cdots & \frac{d^{n-1}}{d t^{n-1}} x_{n}
\end{array}\right]
$$

If $w\left(t_{0}\right) \neq 0$ for some $t_{0}$, then $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ forms a fundamental set of solution.
We solve the equation through the characteristic equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda^{n}+a_{n-1} \lambda^{n-1}+\ldots+a_{1} \lambda+a_{0}=0 \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation is derived by guessing a solution $x(t)$ has the form $e^{\lambda t}$ with $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.
The characteristic equation 3.17 has $n$ complex roots $\hat{\lambda}_{j}$ counted with their multiplicities $l_{j}$. In other words, equation (3.17) can be rewritten in the form

$$
\prod_{j=1}^{m}\left(\lambda-\hat{\lambda}_{j}\right)^{l_{j}}=0
$$

with $\sum_{j=1}^{m} l_{j}=n$. In fact, the general solution $x(t)$ is a linear combination of $t^{k} e^{\hat{\lambda}_{j} t}$ for $0 \leq k<l_{j}$ and $j=1, \ldots, m$. In particular, if $m=n$, then $x(t)$ is a linear combination of $e^{\hat{\lambda}_{j} t}$.

THEOREM 3.21. Let $\hat{\lambda}_{j}, 1 \leq j \leq m$, be the zeros of the characteristic polynomial 3.17) associated with (3.16) and let $l_{j}$ be the corresponding multiplicities. Then the functions

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{j, k}(t)=t^{k} e^{\hat{\lambda}_{j} t}, \quad 0 \leq k<l_{j}, \quad 1 \leq j \leq m \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

are $n$ linearly independent solutions of (3.16). In particular, any other solution can be written as a linear combination of these solutions.

REMARK 3.22. Let $y=\left(x, d x / d t, \ldots, d^{n-1} x / d t^{n-1}\right)^{\top}$. Then 3.16) can be rewritten as

$$
\frac{d y}{d t}=A y \quad \text { with } A:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & \ddots & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\
-a_{0} & -a_{1} & \ldots & -a_{n-1}
\end{array}\right)
$$

The characteristic polynomial of $A, P(\lambda):=\operatorname{det}(A-\lambda I)$, is given by $P(\lambda)=\prod_{j=1}^{m}\left(\lambda-\hat{\lambda}_{j}\right)^{l_{j}}$. The algebraic multiplicity of the eigenvalue $\hat{\lambda}_{j}$ of $A$ is $l_{j}$. If $A$ has a basis of eigenvectors, there will only be in $y(t)$ terms of the form $e^{\lambda_{j} t}$. In general, let $J$ be the Jordan bloc form of $A$. Then $e^{t A}=C^{-1} e^{t J} C$ for some invertible matrix $C$, where

$$
e^{t J}=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
e^{t J_{1}} & & 0 \\
& \ddots & \\
0 & & e^{t J_{k}}
\end{array}\right)
$$

and

$$
e^{t J_{i}}=e^{t\left(\hat{\lambda}_{i} I+N_{i}\right)}=e^{t \hat{\lambda}_{i}}\left(I+t N_{i}+\ldots+\frac{t^{l_{i}-1}}{\left(l_{i}-1\right)!} N_{i}^{l_{i}-1}\right) .
$$

Therefore, as stated in Theorem 3.21, in general the solution with be the sum of terms of the form $t^{k} e^{\hat{\lambda}_{j} t}, k<l_{j}$.
3.4.3. Reduction of order. Here we discuss a method for finding a second solution to the homogeneous second order ODE when a first solution is known by reducing the order.

Suppose that $x_{1}$ a solution of (3.13). Let

$$
x(t)=v(t) x_{1}(t) .
$$

Then

$$
\frac{d x}{d t}(t)=\frac{d v}{d t} x_{1}+v \frac{d x_{1}}{d t}
$$

and

$$
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}(t)=\frac{d^{2} v}{d t^{2}} x_{1}+2 \frac{d v}{d t} \frac{d x_{1}}{d t}+v \frac{d^{2} x_{1}}{d t^{2}} .
$$

So, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} v}{d t^{2}}+\left(p+2 \frac{\left(d x_{1} / d t\right)}{x_{1}}\right) \frac{d v}{d t}=0 . \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

By letting $u=d v / d t$, the equation above can be rewritten as a first order ODE

$$
\frac{d u}{d t}+\left(p+2 \frac{\left(d x_{1} / d t\right)}{x_{1}}\right) u=0 .
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=c e^{-\int^{t}\left(p+2 \frac{\left(d x_{1} / d t\right)}{x_{1}}\right) d s}=\frac{c}{\left(x_{1}(t)\right)^{2}} e^{-\int^{t} p(s) d s} . \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $v=\int^{t} u(s) d s$, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=x_{1}(t) \int^{t} u(s) d s . \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

In conclusion, if one solution to $(3.13)$ is known, then a second solution can be found and it is expressed by (3.21), where $u$ is given by (3.20).

Example 3.23. Consider the differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}-2 t \frac{d x}{d t}-2 x=0, \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

and observe that $x_{1}(t)=e^{t^{2}}$ is a solution. Hence we can set $x(t)=e^{t^{2}} v(t)$. Then from 3.19), it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} v}{d t^{2}}+2 t \frac{d v}{d t}=0 \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

The solution of (3.23) is given by

$$
\frac{d v}{d t}=e^{-t^{2}}
$$

implying that

$$
v(t)=\int_{0}^{t} e^{-s^{2}} d s=\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2} \operatorname{erf}(t)
$$

where erf is the Gauss error function. Hence a second solution to (3.22) is given by

$$
x_{2}(t)=e^{t^{2}} \operatorname{erf}(t)
$$

### 3.5. Linearization and stability for autonomous systems

3.5.1. Linear systems. Let $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})$ be independent of $t$. Consider the following linear system of ODEs:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=A x(t), \quad t \in[0,+\infty[  \tag{3.24}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

By Lemma 3.3, there exists $C \in G L_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ such that

$$
C^{-1} A C=D+N
$$

where $D$ is diagonal, $N$ is nilpotent, and $N D=D N$. Let $\lambda_{j}, j=1, \ldots, J$ be the (distinct) eigenvalues of $A$. Let $l_{j}$ be the (algebraic) multiplicity of $\lambda_{j}$ and denote by $E_{j}=\operatorname{ker}\left(A-\lambda_{j} I\right)^{l_{j}}$ the characteristic subspace associated with $\lambda_{j}$ (called also generalized eigenspace). We have $\oplus E_{j}=\mathbb{C}^{d}$. Moreover, each $E_{j}$ is invariant under $A$.

The system (3.24) is said to be stable if there exists a positive constant $C_{0}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
|x(t)| \leq C_{0}\left|x_{0}\right| \quad \text { for all } t \in[0,+\infty[. \tag{3.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lemma 3.24. The system (3.24) is stable if and only if $\Re \lambda_{j}<0$ or $\Re \lambda_{j}=0$ and $\left.N\right|_{E_{j}}=0$ for $j=1, \ldots, J$.

Proof. Let $\widetilde{x}(t)=C^{-1} x(t)$ and $\widetilde{x}_{0}=C^{-1} x_{0}$. By Lemma 3.5.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{x}(t)=e^{t D+t N} \widetilde{x}_{0}, \quad t \in[0,+\infty[ \tag{3.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $D N=N D$, (3.26) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{x}(t)=\left(\sum_{i=0}^{d-1} \frac{(t N)^{i}}{i!}\right) e^{t D} \widetilde{x}_{0}, \quad t \in[0,+\infty[. \tag{3.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\widetilde{x}_{0} \in E_{j}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{x}(t)=e^{t \lambda_{j}}\left(\sum_{i=0}^{d-1} \frac{(t N)^{i}}{i!}\right) \widetilde{x}_{0}, \quad t \in[0,+\infty[. \tag{3.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, $x(t)$ satisfies (3.25) for some positive constant $C_{0}$ if and only if $\Re \lambda_{j}<0$ or $\Re \lambda_{j}=0$ and $\left.N\right|_{E_{j}}=0$.
3.5.2. Nonlinear systems. Consider the autonomous system

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(x)  \tag{3.29}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $f$ is $\mathcal{C}^{1}$. Suppose that $x^{*}$ is an equilibrium point for 3.29, i.e., $f\left(x^{*}\right)=0$.
Theorem 3.25 (Local stability). Suppose that all the eigenvalues $\lambda$ of the Jacobian of $f$ at $x^{*}, f^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)$, are with negative real parts. Then, there exists $\delta>0$ such that if $\left|x_{0}-x^{*}\right| \leq \delta$, then $\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right| \rightarrow 0$ as $t \rightarrow+\infty$.

Proof. Let $A=f^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)$ and consider the linearized system

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d y(t)}{d t}=A y(t), \quad t \geq 0  \tag{3.30}\\
y(0)=x_{0}-x^{*}
\end{array}\right.
$$

which, in view of (3.3), has the explicit solution $y(t)=e^{t A}\left(x_{0}-x^{*}\right)$ for $t \geq 0$. Suppose that $\Re \lambda<0$ for any eigenvalue $\lambda$ of $f^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)$. From (3.27), it follows that there exists $r>0$ such that

$$
\left|e^{t A} z\right| \leq C_{0} e^{-r t}|z| \quad \text { for all } z \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
$$

where the constant $C_{0}$ depends only on $f$.

Now, rewrite (3.29) as a small perturbation of the linearized system

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=A\left(x-x^{*}\right)+g(x)  \tag{3.31}\\
x(0)=x^{*}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(x)=\left|x-x^{*}\right| \epsilon(x), \quad \text { with } \epsilon \in \mathcal{C}^{0} \quad \text { and } \epsilon\left(x^{*}\right)=0 \tag{3.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Observe that there exists $\delta_{0}>0$ such that for all $\left.\delta \in\right] 0, \delta_{0}[$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sup \left\{|g(x)|:\left|x-x^{*}\right| \leq \delta\right\}<\frac{r \delta}{C_{0}} \tag{3.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

To conclude it suffices to prove that if $\left|x_{0}-x^{*}\right|<\min \left(\delta, \delta / C_{0}\right)$, then

$$
\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right| \leq \delta \quad \text { for all } t \geq 0
$$

From (3.31), it follows that

$$
x(t)-x^{*}=e^{t A}\left(x_{0}-x^{*}\right)+\int_{0}^{t} e^{(t-s) A} g(x(s)) d s
$$

and hence, 3.32 yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right| & \leq e^{-r t}\left(C_{0}\left|x_{0}-x^{*}\right|+\int_{0}^{t} e^{-r(t-s)} C_{0}|g(x(s))| d s\right) \\
& \leq e^{-r t}\left(C_{0}\left|x_{0}-x^{*}\right|+\left(1-e^{-r t}\right) \frac{C_{0}}{r} \sup \{\mid g(x(s) \mid: 0 \leq s \leq t\})\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, for all $t \geq 0$,

$$
\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right| \leq \max \left(C_{0}\left|x_{0}-x^{*}\right|, \frac{C_{0}}{r} \sup \{\mid g(x(s) \mid: 0 \leq s \leq t\})\right.
$$

Introduce

$$
T:=\inf \left\{t>0:\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right| \geq \delta\right\}
$$

If we assume that $T$ is finite, we would obtain

$$
\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right| \leq \delta \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T], \quad\left|x(T)-x^{*}\right|=\delta
$$

In view of 3.32 , we arrive at a contradiction by using (3.33).
Definition 3.26. A function $V \in \mathcal{C}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}, \mathbb{R}\right)$ is said to be a Lyapunov function for 3.29) if

$$
\begin{equation*}
V\left(x^{*}\right)<V(x) \quad \text { for any } x \neq x^{*} \tag{3.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(x) \cdot V^{\prime}(x) \leq 0 \quad \text { for any } x \in \mathbb{R}^{d} \tag{3.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Example 3.27. (i) Consider the system

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{d x_{1}}{d t} & =x_{2}  \tag{3.36}\\
\frac{d x_{2}}{d t} & =-2 x_{1}-x_{2}
\end{align*}\right.
$$

Then $x^{*}=(0,0)$ is an equilibrium point and

$$
V(x)=x_{1}^{2}+\frac{1}{2} x_{2}^{2}
$$

is a Lyapunov function for 3.36.
(ii) For the gradient systems introduced in Subsection 1.3.4, there is a natural candidate for a Lyapunov function. Suppose that $f(x)=-\nabla \Phi(x)$. Suppose that the potential $\Phi$ is smooth and there exists $x^{*}$ such that $\Phi\left(x^{*}\right)<\Phi(x)$ for any $x \neq x^{*}$. Then $V=\Phi$ is a Lyapunov function for 3.29).

Theorem 3.28. Suppose that there exists a Lyapunov function $V$. Then, for any $\epsilon>0$, there exists $\delta>0$, such that

$$
\sup _{t \geq 0}\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right| \leq \epsilon
$$

provided that $\left|x_{0}-x^{*}\right| \leq \delta$.
Proof. Condition (3.34) on $V$ implies that for fixed $\epsilon>0$, there exists $\gamma>0$ (sufficiently small) such that

$$
\left\{x:\left|x-x^{*}\right| \leq 2 \epsilon, V(x) \leq V\left(x^{*}\right)+\gamma\right\} \subset\left\{x:\left|x-x^{*}\right| \leq \epsilon\right\}
$$

Choose $\delta(0<\delta<\epsilon)$ such that

$$
\left\{x:\left|x-x^{*}\right| \leq \delta\right\} \subset\left\{x:\left|x-x^{*}\right| \leq 2 \epsilon, V(x) \leq V\left(x^{*}\right)+\gamma\right\} .
$$

By using the fundamental property of a Lyapunov function $V$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} V(x(t))=f(x(t)) \cdot V^{\prime}(x(t)) \leq 0, \quad t \geq 0 \tag{3.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

we obtain that

$$
V(x(t)) \leq V\left(x_{0}\right) \leq V\left(x^{*}\right)+\gamma \quad \text { if }\left|x_{0}-x^{*}\right| \leq \delta
$$

In fact, we have

$$
\left|x(s)-x^{*}\right| \leq 2 \epsilon \quad \text { for all } s \geq 0
$$

since otherwise, there would exist $t>0$ such that $\left|x(t)-x^{*}\right|=2 \epsilon$. From $V(x(t)) \leq V\left(x^{*}\right)+\gamma$ we would arrive at a contradiction.

THEOREM 3.29 (Global stability). Suppose that there exists $V \in \mathcal{C}^{1}\left(\mathbb{R}^{d}, \mathbb{R}\right)$ satisfying (3.34) such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(x) \cdot V^{\prime}(x)<0 \quad \text { for any } x \neq x^{*} \tag{3.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the set $\left\{x: V(x) \leq V\left(x_{0}\right)\right\}$ is bounded. Then the solution $x(t)$ of (3.29) converges to $x^{*}$ as $t \rightarrow+\infty$.

Proof. As in the proof of Theorem 3.28, we have $V(x(t)) \leq V\left(x_{0}\right)$ and thus $\{x(t): t \geq 0\}$ is bounded. More precisely, 3.37 yields

$$
\int_{0}^{+\infty}\left|f(x(t)) \cdot V^{\prime}(x(t))\right| d t=\int_{0}^{+\infty}-f(x(t)) \cdot V^{\prime}(x(t)) d t \leq V\left(x_{0}\right)-V^{*}
$$

where $V^{*}:=\lim _{t \rightarrow+\infty} V(x(t))$. Note that $V^{*}>-\infty$ since $(x(t))_{t \geq 0}$ is bounded.
Therefore, we can choose $\left(t_{n}\right)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $x\left(t_{n}\right) \rightarrow \widetilde{x}$ and $f\left(x\left(t_{n}\right)\right) \cdot V^{\prime}\left(x\left(t_{n}\right)\right) \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow+\infty$. Hence,

$$
f(\widetilde{x}) \cdot V^{\prime}(\widetilde{x})=0,
$$

which, by (3.38, gives $\widetilde{x}=x^{*}$.
Example 3.30. Consider the equation $d x / d t=f(x)$ with the initial condition $x(0)=x_{0}$, where $f(0)=0$ and $x^{\top} \cdot f(x)<0$ if $x \neq 0$. Then $x^{*}=0$ is the unique equilibrium point. Let $V(x):=|x|^{2}$. We have $V(x)>V(0)$ for $x \neq 0$ and $d V / d t=2 x^{\top} \cdot(d x / d t)=2 x^{\top} \cdot f(x)<0$. Moreover, $\left\{x: V(x) \leq V\left(x_{0}\right)\right\}$ is bounded since $V(x) \rightarrow+\infty$ if $|x| \rightarrow+\infty$. Therefore, it follows from Theorem 3.29 that $\lim _{t \rightarrow+\infty} x(t)=0$.

Problem 3.31 (Laplace transform). (i) Prove that if $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})$, then

$$
e^{t A}-I=\int_{0}^{t} A e^{s A} d s
$$

(ii) Prove that if all eigenvalues of $A$ have negative real parts, then

$$
-A^{-1}=\int_{0}^{+\infty} e^{s A} d s
$$

(iii) Prove that if $s \in \mathbb{R}$ is sufficiently large, then

$$
(s A-I)^{-1}=\int_{0}^{+\infty} e^{s(A-t I)} d s
$$

that is, the Laplace transform of $e^{t A}$ is $(s I-A)^{-1}$.
Problem 3.32. Let $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})$.
(i) Apply the Jacobi formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \operatorname{det} B(t)=(\operatorname{det} B(t)) \operatorname{tr}\left(B(t)^{-1} \frac{d B}{d t}(t)\right) \tag{3.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $B(t)=e^{t A}$ to prove that

$$
\operatorname{det} e^{A}=e^{\operatorname{tr} A}
$$

(ii) Prove that a vector $u$ is an eigenvector of $A$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $\alpha$ if and only if $u$ is an eigenvector of $e^{A}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $e^{\alpha}$.
(iii) Prove that if $\operatorname{det} A(t) \neq 0$, then

$$
\frac{d}{d t} A^{-1}(t)=-A^{-1}(t) \frac{d A}{d t}(t) A^{-1}(t)
$$

(iv) Prove that

$$
\operatorname{det}(I+\epsilon A+o(\epsilon))=1+\epsilon \operatorname{tr} A+o(\epsilon)
$$

where $o(\epsilon)$ (Landau symbol) collects terms which vanish faster than $\epsilon$ as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$.
Problem 3.33 (Reduction of order). Use reduction of order to find the general solution of the following equations:

$$
\begin{equation*}
t \frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}-2(t+1) \frac{d x}{d t}+(t+2) x=0, \quad x_{1}(t)=e^{t} \tag{i}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii)

$$
t^{2} \frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}-3 t \frac{d x}{d t}+4 x=0, \quad x_{1}(t)=t^{2}
$$

## Problem 3.34.

> (i) Verify that the second-order equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}+\left(1-t^{2}\right) x=0 \tag{3.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be factorized as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\frac{d}{d t}-t\right)\left(\frac{d}{d t}+t\right) x=0 \tag{3.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) By solving two first-order problems, find the solution of 3.40.

Problem 3.35. Let $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{R})$ be independent of $t$. Consider the linear system of ODEs (3.24).
(i) Assume that there exist two positive definite matrices $P$ and $Q$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
A^{\top} P+P A=-Q \tag{3.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

Prove that $V(x):=x^{\top} P x$ is a Lyapunov function for (3.24).
(ii) Define

$$
r:=\min _{x \neq 0} \frac{x^{\top} Q x}{x^{\top} P x}
$$

Prove that $V(x(t)) \leq e^{-r t} V\left(x_{0}\right)$, where $x(t)$ is the solution of (3.24).
(iii) Assume that every eigenvalue of $A$ has a negative real part. Prove that given $Q$, the solution $P$ to (3.42) can be written as

$$
P=\int_{0}^{+\infty} e^{t A^{\top}} Q e^{t A} d t
$$

Problem 3.36 (Convergence of the gradient algorithm for finding a local minimum of a function). Let $f: \mathbb{R}^{d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and assume that $x^{*}$ is a local minimum, i.e., $f\left(x^{*}\right)<f(x)$ for $x$ close enough but not equal to $x^{*}$. Assume that $f$ is continuously differentiable and let $x(t)$ be the solution to

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d x}{d t}=-\nabla f(x), \quad t \in[0,+\infty[ \\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

(i) Prove that if $x_{0}$ is close to $x^{*}$ then $\lim _{t \rightarrow+\infty} x(t)=x^{*}$.
(ii) Let $f(x)=\frac{1}{2} x^{\top} Q x$, where $Q$ is symmetric, positive definite. Show directly that $x(t)$ converges to zero ( $=x^{*}$ ).

## Numerical solution of ordinary differential equations

### 4.1. Introduction

This chapter is concerned with the numerical solution of initial value problems for systems of ordinary differential equations. Since there is no hope of solving the vast majority of differential equations in explicit and analytic form, the design of suitable numerical schemes for accurately approximating solutions is essential. Explicit solutions, when they are known, can also be used as test cases for tracking the reliability and accuracy of a chosen numerical scheme. In this chapter, we survey the most basic numerical methods for solving initial value problems. It goes without saying that some equations are more difficult to accurately approximate than others, and a variety of more specialized techniques are employed when confronted with a recalcitrant system. However, all of the more advanced developments build on the basic schemes and ideas laid out in this chapter.

### 4.2. The general explicit one-step method

4.2.1. Consistency, stability and convergence. Consider the initial value problem

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =f(t, x), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{4.1}\\
x(0) & =x_{0}, \quad x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}
\end{align*}\right.
$$

where $f \in \mathcal{C}^{0}([0, t] \times \mathbb{R})$ satisfies the Lipschitz condition 2.2 .
Starting at the initial time $t=0$, we introduce successive discretization points

$$
t_{0}=0<t_{1}<t_{2}<\ldots
$$

continuing on until we reach the final time $T$. To keep the analysis as simple as possible, we use a uniform step size, and so

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta t:=t_{k+1}-t_{k}>0 \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

does not dependent on $k$ and is assumed to be relatively small, with $t_{k}=k \Delta t$. We also suppose that $K=T /(\Delta t)$ is an integer.

A general explicit one-step method may be written in the form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\Delta t \Phi\left(t_{k}, x^{k}, \Delta t\right) \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some continuous function $\Phi(t, x, h)$. In (4.3), taking in succession $k=0,1, \ldots, K-1$, onestep at a time, the approximate values $x^{k}$ of $x$ at $t_{k}$ can be easily obtained. Scheme 4.3 is called explicit since $x^{k+1}$ is obtained from $x^{k} . x^{k+1}$ appears only on the left-hand side of (4.3).

We define the truncation error of the numerical scheme 4.3) by

$$
\begin{equation*}
T_{k}(\Delta t)=\frac{x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)}{\Delta t}-\Phi\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right), \Delta t\right) \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

As $\Delta t \rightarrow 0, k \rightarrow+\infty, k \Delta t=t$,

$$
T_{k}(\Delta t) \rightarrow \frac{d x}{d t}-\Phi(t, x, 0)
$$

Definition 4.1 (Consistency). The numerical scheme 4.3) is consistent with 4.1) if

$$
\Phi(t, x, 0)=f(t, x) \quad \text { for all } t \in[0, T] \text { and } x \in \mathbb{R}
$$

Definition 4.2 (Stability). The numerical scheme (4.3) for solving (4.1) is stable if $\Phi$ is Lipschitz continuous in $x$, i.e., there exist positive constants $C_{\Phi}$ and $h_{0}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\Phi(t, x, h)-\Phi(t, y, h)| \leq C_{\Phi}|x-y|, \quad t \in[0, T], h \in\left[0, h_{0}\right], x, y \in \mathbb{R} \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define global error the of the numerical scheme 4.3) by

$$
\begin{equation*}
e_{k}=x^{k}-x\left(t_{k}\right) \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Definition 4.3 (Convergence). The numerical scheme (4.3) for solving 4.1) is convergent if

$$
\left|e_{k}\right| \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { as } \Delta t \rightarrow 0, k \rightarrow+\infty, k \Delta t=t \in[0, T]
$$

Theorem 4.4 (Dahlquist-Lax equivalence theorem). The numerical scheme 4.3) is convergent if and only if it is consistent and stable.

Proof. From 4.1, it follows that

$$
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)=\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s, x(s)) d s
$$

which gives

$$
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)=(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}}\left[f(s, x(s))-f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right] d s
$$

Therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)-(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right|=\left|\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}}\left[f(s, x(s))-f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right] d s\right| \leq(\Delta t) \omega_{1}(\Delta t) \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\omega_{1}(\Delta t):=\sup \{|f(t, x(t))-f(s, x(s))|, 0 \leq s, t \leq T,|t-s| \leq \Delta t\} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $\omega_{1}(\Delta t) \rightarrow 0$ as $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$. Moreover, if $f$ is Lipschitz in $t$, then $\omega_{1}(\Delta t)=O(\Delta t)$.
From 4.3) and

$$
e_{k+1}-e_{k}=x^{k+1}-x^{k}-\left(x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)
$$

we obtain

$$
e_{k+1}-e_{k}=\Delta t \Phi\left(t_{k}, x^{k}, \Delta t\right)-\left(x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)
$$

or equivalently,

$$
e_{k+1}-e_{k}=\Delta t\left[\Phi\left(t_{k}, x^{k}, \Delta t\right)-f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right]-\left[x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)-\Delta t f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right]
$$

Write

$$
\begin{align*}
e_{k+1}-e_{k}= & \Delta t\left[\Phi\left(t_{k}, x^{k}, \Delta t\right)-\Phi\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right), \Delta t\right)+\Phi\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right), \Delta t\right)\right. \\
& \left.-f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right]-\left[x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)-\Delta t f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right] \tag{4.9}
\end{align*}
$$

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
\omega_{2}(\Delta t):=\sup \{|\Phi(t, x, h)-f(t, x)|, t \in[0, T], x \in \mathbb{R}, 0<h \leq(\Delta t)\} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the numerical scheme is consistent,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Phi\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right), \Delta t\right)-f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right| \leq \omega_{2}(\Delta t) \rightarrow 0 \text { as } \Delta t \rightarrow 0 \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, from the stability condition 4.5, it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\Phi\left(t_{k}, x^{k}, \Delta t\right)-\Phi\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right), \Delta t\right)\right| \leq C_{\Phi}\left|e_{k}\right| \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining 4.7, 4.9, 4.11, and 4.12 yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|e_{k+1}\right| \leq\left(1+\overline{C_{\Phi} \Delta t}\right)\left|e_{k}\right|+\Delta t \omega_{3}(\Delta t), \quad 0 \leq k \leq K-1 \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $K=T /(\Delta t)$ and $\omega_{3}(\Delta t):=\omega_{1}(\Delta t)+\omega_{2}(\Delta t) \rightarrow 0$ as $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$. By induction, we deduce from (4.13) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|e_{k+1}\right| \leq\left(1+C_{\Phi} \Delta t\right)^{k}\left|e_{0}\right|+(\Delta t) \omega_{3}(\Delta t) \sum_{l=0}^{k-1}\left(1+C_{\Phi} \Delta t\right)^{l}, \quad 0 \leq k \leq K \tag{4.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Estimate 4.14 together with

$$
\sum_{l=0}^{k-1}\left(1+C_{\Phi} \Delta t\right)^{l}=\frac{\left(1+C_{\Phi} \Delta t\right)^{k}-1}{C_{\Phi} \Delta t}
$$

and

$$
\left(1+C_{\Phi} \Delta t\right)^{K} \leq\left(1+C_{\Phi} \frac{T}{K}\right)^{K} \leq e^{C_{\Phi} T}
$$

yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|e_{k}\right| \leq e^{C_{\Phi} T}\left|e_{0}\right|+\frac{e^{C_{\Phi} T}-1}{C_{\Phi}} \omega_{3}(\Delta t) \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, if $e_{0}=0$, then as $\Delta t \rightarrow 0, k \rightarrow+\infty$ such that $k \Delta t=t \in[0, T]$

$$
\lim _{k \rightarrow+\infty}\left|e_{k}\right|=0
$$

which shows that the scheme is in fact convergent.

DEFINITION 4.5. An explicit one-step method is said to be of order $p$ if there exist positive constants $h_{0}$ and $C$ such that

$$
\left|T_{k}(\Delta t)\right| \leq C(\Delta t)^{p}, \quad 0<\Delta t \leq h_{0}, k=0, \ldots, K-1
$$

where the truncation error $T_{k}(\Delta t)$ is defined by 4.4.
If the explicit one-step method is stable, then the global error is bounded by the truncation error.

Proposition 4.6. Consider the explicit one-step scheme 4.3), where $\Phi$ satisfies the stability condition 4.5). Suppose that $e_{0}=0$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|e_{k+1}\right| \leq \frac{\left(e^{C_{\Phi} T}-1\right)}{C_{\Phi}} \max _{0 \leq l \leq k}\left|T_{l}(\Delta t)\right| \quad \text { for } k=0, \ldots, K-1 \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the truncation error $T_{l}$ and the global error $e_{k}$ are defined by 4.4) and 4.6), respectively.
Proof. From 4.9, we have

$$
e_{k+1}-e_{k}=-(\Delta t) T_{k}(\Delta t)+(\Delta t)\left[\Phi\left(t_{k}, x^{k}, \Delta t\right)-\Phi\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right), \Delta t\right)\right]
$$

so we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left|e_{k+1}\right| & \leq\left(1+C_{\Phi}(\Delta t)\right)\left|e_{k}\right|+(\Delta t)\left|T_{k}(\Delta t)\right| \\
& \leq\left(1+C_{\Phi}(\Delta t)\right)\left|e_{k}\right|+(\Delta t) \max _{0 \leq l \leq k}\left|T_{l}(\Delta t)\right|
\end{aligned}
$$

In exactly the same manner as in the proof of Theorem 4.4, we obtain estimate 4.16.
4.2.2. Explicit Euler's method. Let $\Phi(t, x, h)=f(t, x)$. The numerical method (4.3) reduces to

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) f\left(t, x^{k}\right) \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

The numerical method 4.17 is called the explicit Euler scheme.
Theorem 4.7. Consider the initial value problem 4.1). Suppose that $f$ satisfies the Lipschitz condition (2.2) and $f$ is Lipschitz with respect to $t$. Then the explicit Euler scheme (4.17) is convergent and the global error $e_{k}$ is of order $\Delta t$. If $f \in \mathcal{C}^{1}$, then 4.17) is of order one.

Proof. Since $f$ satisfies the Lipschitz condition (2.2) then the numerical scheme with $\Phi(t, x, h)=$ $f(t, x)$ is stable. Moreover, it is consistent since $\Phi(t, x, 0)=f(t, x)$ for all $t \in[0, T]$ and $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Therefore, by Theorem 4.4, 4.17) is convergent. Furthermore, since $f$ is Lipschitz in $t, \omega_{1}(\Delta t)=$ $O(\Delta t)$, where $\omega_{1}$ is defined by 4.8). On the other hand, $\omega_{2}(\Delta t)=0$, and hence $\omega_{3}(\Delta t)=O(\Delta t)$, where $\omega_{2}$ is defined by 4.10) and $\omega_{3}=\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}$. Then, from 4.15), we have $\left|e_{k}\right|=O(\Delta t)$ for $1 \leq k \leq K$. Now if $f \in \mathcal{C}^{1}$, then from Theorem $2.20 x \in \mathcal{C}^{2}$. By using the mean-value theorem, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
T_{k}(\Delta t) & =\frac{1}{\Delta t}\left(x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)-f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right) \\
& =\frac{1}{\Delta t}\left(x\left(t_{k}\right)+(\Delta t) \frac{d x}{d t}\left(t_{k}\right)+\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{2} \frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}(\tau)-x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)-f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)  \tag{4.18}\\
& =\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}(\tau)
\end{align*}
$$

for some $\tau \in\left[t_{k}, t_{k+1}\right]$, which shows that 4.17 is of first order.
REMARK 4.8 (Round off error effects). Theorem 4.7 is true provided the arithmetic in calculating the numerical approximation is perfect, that is, when performing the operations required by $\sqrt{4.17)}$ no errors occur. However computers always round off real numbers. In numerical methods rounding errors become important when the step size $\Delta t$ is comparable with the precision of the computations. Thus, when running Euler's method 4.17), the best we can do is to compute the solution of the perturbed scheme:

$$
\widetilde{x}^{k+1}=\widetilde{x}^{k}+\Delta t f\left(t_{k}, \widetilde{x}^{k}\right)+(\Delta t) \mu^{k}+\rho^{k}
$$

where $\mu^{k}$ and $\rho^{k}$ represent the errors in $f$ and in the assembling, respectively. Assume that $\left|\mu^{k}\right| \leq \mu$ and $\left|\rho^{k}\right| \leq \rho$ for all $k$ and $f \in \mathcal{C}^{1}$. Defining $\widetilde{e}^{k}=x\left(t_{k}\right)-\widetilde{x}^{k}$, we have

$$
\left|\widetilde{e}^{k+1}\right| \leq\left(1+C_{f} \Delta t\right) \widetilde{e}^{k}+(\Delta t) \mu+\rho,
$$

and hence

$$
\left|\widetilde{e}^{k}\right| \leq e^{C_{f} T}\left|\widetilde{e}^{0}\right|+(\Delta t) e^{C_{f} T} \int_{0}^{T}\left|\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}\right|(s) d s+\mu(\Delta t) \frac{e^{C_{f} T}}{C_{f}}+\rho \frac{T}{\Delta t} e^{C_{f} T}
$$

where $C_{f}$ is the Lipschitz constant for $f$.
Introduce

$$
\varphi(\Delta t)=\frac{\mu e^{C_{f} T}}{C_{f}} \Delta t+\frac{T \rho e^{C_{f} T}}{\Delta t}
$$

One can see that $\varphi$ attains its minimum at $\sqrt{\rho C_{f} T / \mu}$ and diverges for $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$. From a practical point of view, it is better to take time steps that are larger than $\sqrt{\rho C_{f} T / \mu}$.

REMARK 4.9 (Control of the time step). In 4.17) the time step is uniform and is chosen such that the global error $\left|e_{k}\right|$ is smaller than a given tolerance. In view of 4.18) this supposes a good knowledge of the exact solution. An alternative method consists in computing the numerical solution for an arbitrary $\Delta t$ and then for $2 \Delta t$. If the discrepancy between the two numerical solutions is smaller than the tolerance, we keep $\Delta t$. If not, we restart the calculations with a smaller step size, say $\Delta t / 2$, until we reach the target.
4.2.3. High-order methods. In general, the order of a numerical solution method governs both the accuracy of its approximations and the speed at which they converge to the true solution as the step size $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$. Although the explicit Euler method is simple and easy to implement, it is only a first order scheme as shown in Theorem 4.7, and therefore of limited use. So, the goal is to devise simple numerical methods that enjoy a higher order of accuracy. The higher its order, the more accurate the numerical scheme, and hence the larger the step size that can be used to produce the solution to a desired accuracy. However, this should be balanced with the fact that higher order methods inevitably require more computational effort at each step.
4.2.3.1. Taylor methods. The explicit Euler scheme is based on a first order Taylor approximation to the solution. The Taylor expansion of the solution $x(t)$ at the discretization points $t_{k+1}$ has the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)=x\left(t_{k}+\Delta t\right)=x\left(t_{k}\right)+(\Delta t) \frac{d x}{d t}\left(t_{k}\right)+\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{2} \frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}\left(t_{k}\right)+\frac{(\Delta t)^{3}}{6} \frac{d^{3} x}{d t^{3}}\left(t_{k}\right)+\ldots \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

We can evaluate the first derivative term by using the differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(t, x) \tag{4.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

The second derivative can be found by differentiating the equation with respect to $t$. Invoking the chain rule,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}=\frac{d}{d t} f(t, x)=\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)+\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, x) \frac{d x}{d t} \tag{4.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Substituting (4.20) and 4.21 into 4.19 and truncating at order $(\Delta t)^{2}$ leads to the second order Taylor method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)+\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{2}\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)+\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)\right) \tag{4.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

in which we have replaced the solution value $x\left(t_{k}\right)$ by its computed approximation $x^{k}$. The resulting method is of second order.

Proposition 4.10. Suppose that $f \in \mathcal{C}^{2}$. Then 4.22) is of second order.
Proof. If $f$ is of class $\mathcal{C}^{2}$, then by Theorem $2.20 x \in \mathcal{C}^{3}$. Therefore, by using the Taylor expansion 4.19, we obtain that the truncation error $T_{k}$ is given by

$$
T_{k}(\Delta t)=\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{6} \frac{d^{3} x}{d t^{3}}(\tau)
$$

for some $\tau \in\left[t_{k}, t_{k+1}\right]$ and so, 4.22 is of second order.
Higher order Taylor methods are obtained by including further terms in the expansion 4.19. Whereas higher order Taylor methods are easy to motivate, they are rarely used in practice. There are two principal difficulties:
(i) Owing to their dependence upon the partial derivatives of $f, f$ needs to be smooth;
(ii) Efficient evaluation of the terms in the Taylor approximation and avoidance of round off errors are significant concerns.
4.2.3.2. Integral equation method. In order to design high-order numerical schemes that avoid the complications inherent in a direct Taylor expansion, we replace the differential equation by an equivalent integral equation. The solution $x(t)$ of 4.1) coincides with the solution to the integral equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} f(s, x(s)) d s, \quad t \in[0, T] \tag{4.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Starting at the discretization point $t_{k}$ instead of 0 , and integrating until time $t=t_{k+1}$ gives an expression

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)=x\left(t_{k}\right)+\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s, x(s)) d s \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

that implicitly computes the value of the solution at the subsequent discretization point. Comparing formula 4.24 with the explicit Euler method

$$
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)
$$

where $\Delta t$ is defined by 4.2 and assuming for the moment that $x^{k}=x\left(t_{k}\right)$ is exact, we see that we are merely approximating the integral by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s, x(s)) d s \approx(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right) \tag{4.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is the left endpoint rule for numerical integration-that approximates the integral of $f(t, x(t))$ between $t_{k} \leq t \leq t_{k+1}$ by the area of the rectangle whose height $f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)$ is prescribed by the left endpoint of the curve $t \mapsto f(t, x(t))$. Approximation 4.25 is not an especially accurate method of numerical integration. Better methods include the Trapezoid rule, which approximates the integral of the function $f(t, x(t))$ between $t_{k} \leq t \leq t_{k+1}$ by the area of the trapezoid obtained by connecting the points $f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)$ and $f\left(t_{k+1}, x\left(t_{k+1}\right)\right)$ of the curve $t \mapsto f(t, x(t))$ by a straight line.

We recall the following basic numerical integration formulas for continuous functions.
(i) Trapezoidal rule:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} g(s) d s \approx \frac{\Delta t}{2}\left(g\left(t_{k+1}\right)+g\left(t_{k}\right)\right) \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) Simpson's rule:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} g(s) d s \approx \frac{\Delta t}{6}\left(g\left(t_{k+1}\right)+4 g\left(\frac{t_{k}+t_{k+1}}{2}\right)+g\left(t_{k}\right)\right) \tag{4.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

(iii) The Trapezoidal rule is exact for polynomials of order one, while the Simpson's rule is exact for polynomials of second order.
Replacing 4.25 by the more accurate Trapezoidal approximation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s, x(s)) d s \approx \frac{(\Delta t)}{2}\left[f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+f\left(t_{k+1}, x\left(t_{k+1}\right)\right)\right] \tag{4.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

and substituting (4.28) into the integral equation 4.24) leads to the Trapezoidal scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{2}\left[f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)+f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k+1}\right)\right] \tag{4.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Trapezoidal scheme is an implicit numerical method, since the updated value $x^{k+1}$ appears on both sides of the equation, and hence is only defined implicitly. Only for very simple functions $f(t, x)$ can one expect to solve 4.29 explicitly for $x^{k+1}$ given $t_{k}, x^{k}$, and $t_{k+1}$.

Proposition 4.11. Suppose that $f \in \mathcal{C}^{2}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{(\Delta t) C_{f}}{2}<1 \tag{4.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $C_{f}$ is the Lipschitz constant for $f$ in $x$ defined by (2.2). Then the Trapezoidal scheme 4.29) is convergent and is of second order.

Proof. Let

$$
\Phi(t, x, \Delta t):=\frac{1}{2}[f(t, x)+f(t+\Delta t, x+(\Delta t) \Phi(t, x, \Delta t))]
$$

The scheme 4.29 is clearly consistent. In order to show that it converges, according to Theorem 4.4. we must establish the stability condition 4.5. We have

$$
|\Phi(t, x, \Delta t)-\Phi(t, y, \Delta t)| \leq C_{f}|x-y|+\frac{\Delta t}{2} C_{f}|\Phi(t, x, \Delta t)-\Phi(t, y, \Delta t)|
$$

Hence

$$
\left(1-\frac{(\Delta t) C_{f}}{2}\right)|\Phi(t, x, \Delta t)-\Phi(t, y, \Delta t)| \leq C_{f}|x-y|
$$

and therefore, 4.5 holds with

$$
C_{\Phi}=\frac{C_{f}}{1-\frac{(\Delta t) C_{f}}{2}},
$$

provided that $\Delta t$ satisfies 4.30 . Now we prove that 4.29 is of second order.
By the mean-value theorem,

$$
\begin{align*}
T_{k}(\Delta t) & =\frac{x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)}{\Delta t}-\frac{1}{2}\left[f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+f\left(t_{k+1}, x\left(t_{k+1}\right)\right)\right]  \tag{4.31}\\
& =-\frac{1}{12}(\Delta t)^{2} \frac{d^{3} x}{d t^{3}}(\tau)
\end{align*}
$$

for some $\tau \in\left[t_{k}, t_{k+1}\right]$, and therefore 4.29 is of second order, provided that $f \in \mathcal{C}^{2}$ (and consequently $x \in \mathcal{C}^{3}$ ).

An alternative is to replace in $4.29 x^{k+1}$ by $x^{k}+(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)$. This yields the improved

## Euler scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{2}\left[f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)+f\left(t_{k+1}, \mathbf{x}^{\mathbf{k}}+(\Delta \mathbf{t}) \mathbf{f}\left(\mathbf{t}_{\mathbf{k}}, \mathbf{x}^{\mathbf{k}}\right)\right)\right] \tag{4.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proposition 4.12. The numerical scheme 4.32) is convergent and is of second order.
The improved Euler scheme 4.32 performs comparably to the Trapezoidal scheme 4.29), and significantly better than the Euler scheme 4.17 ). The improved Euler scheme 4.32 is the simplest of a large family of so-called predictor-corrector algorithms. In general, one begins by using a relatively crude method-in this case the explicit Euler method-to predict a first approximation $\widetilde{x}^{k+1}$ to the desired solution value $x\left(t_{k+1}\right)$. One then employs a more sophisticated, typically implicit, method to correct the original prediction, by replacing the required update $x^{k+1}$ on the right-hand side of the implicit scheme by a less accurate prediction $\widetilde{x}^{k+1}$. The resulting explicit, corrected value $x^{k+1}$ will be an improved approximation of the true solution, provided the method has been designed with due care.

We can design a range of numerical solution schemes by implementing alternative numerical approximations to the integral equation 4.24. For example, the midpoint rule approximates the integral of $f(t, x(t))$ between $t_{k} \leq t \leq t_{k+1}$ by the area of the rectangle whose height is the value of $f$ at the midpoint $t=t_{k}+(\Delta t) / 2$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s, x(s)) d s \approx(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2}, x\left(t_{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2}\right)\right) \tag{4.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The midpoint rule has the same order of accuracy as the trapezoid rule. Substituting (4.33) into 4.24 leads to the midpoint scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2}, x^{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2} f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)\right) \tag{4.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we have approximated $x\left(t_{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2}\right)$ by $x^{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2} f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)$.
A comparison between the terms in the Taylor expansion 4.19) of $x\left(t_{k+1}\right)$ and 4.34) reveals that the midpoint scheme is also of second order.

### 4.3. Example of linear systems

Consider the linear system of ODEs $(3.24)$, where $A \in \mathbb{M}_{d}(\mathbb{C})$ is independent of $t$.
A one-step numerical scheme for solving (3.24) is said to be stable if there exists a positive constant $C_{0}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x^{k+1}\right| \leq C_{0}\left|x^{0}\right| \quad \text { for all } k \in \mathbb{N} \tag{4.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider the following schemes for solving $(3.1)$ :
(i) Explicit Euler's scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) A x^{k} \tag{4.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) Implicit Euler's scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) A x^{k+1} \tag{4.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

(iii) Trapezoidal scheme:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{2}\left[A x^{k}+A x^{k+1}\right] \tag{4.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $k \in \mathbb{N}$, and $x^{0}=x_{0}$.
Proposition 4.13. Suppose that $\Re \lambda_{j}<0$ for all $j$. The following results hold:
(i) The explicit Euler scheme (4.36) is stable for $\Delta t$ small enough;
(ii) The implicit Euler scheme is unconditionally stable;
(iii) The Trapezoidal scheme 4.38) is unconditionally stable.

Proof. Consider the explicit Euler scheme 4.36). By a change of basis, we have

$$
\widetilde{x}^{k+1}=(I+\Delta t(D+N))^{k} \widetilde{x}^{0}
$$

where $\widetilde{x}^{k}=C x^{k}$. If $\widetilde{x}^{0} \in E_{j}$, then

$$
\widetilde{x}^{k}=\sum_{l=0}^{\min \{k, d\}} C_{k}^{l}\left(1+\Delta t \lambda_{j}\right)^{k-l}(\Delta t)^{l} N^{l} \widetilde{x}^{0}
$$

where $C_{k}^{l}$ is the binomial coefficient.
If $\left|1+(\Delta t) \lambda_{j}\right|<1$, then $\widetilde{x}^{k}$ is bounded. If $\left|1+(\Delta t) \lambda_{j}\right|>1$, then one can find $\widetilde{x}^{0}$ such that $\left|\widetilde{x}^{k}\right| \rightarrow+\infty$ (exponentially) as $k \rightarrow+\infty$. If $\left|1+(\Delta t) \lambda_{j}\right|=1$ and $N \neq 0$, then for all $\widetilde{x}^{0}$ such that $N \widetilde{x}^{0} \neq 0, N^{2} \widetilde{x}^{0}=0$, it can be seen that

$$
\widetilde{x}^{k}=\left(1+(\Delta t) \lambda_{j}\right)^{k} \widetilde{x}^{0}+\left(1+(\Delta t) \lambda_{j}\right)^{k-1} k \Delta t N \widetilde{x}^{0}
$$

goes to infinity as $k \rightarrow+\infty$.
The stability condition $\left|1+(\Delta t) \lambda_{j}\right|<1$ is equivalent to

$$
\Delta t<-2 \frac{\Re \lambda_{j}}{\left|\lambda_{j}\right|^{2}},
$$

and therefore holds for $\Delta t$ small enough.
For the implicit Euler scheme 4.36), we have

$$
\widetilde{x}^{k+1}=(I-\Delta t(D+N))^{-k} \widetilde{x}^{0}
$$

Note that all the eigenvalues of the matrix $(I-\Delta t(D+N))^{-1}$ are of modulus strictly smaller than 1. Therefore, the implicit Euler scheme 4.36 is unconditionally stable.

For the Trapezoidal scheme, we have

$$
\widetilde{x}^{k+1}=\left(I-\frac{(\Delta t)}{2}(D+N)\right)^{-k}\left(I+\frac{(\Delta t)}{2}(D+N)\right)^{k} \widetilde{x}^{0}
$$

Therefore, the stability condition is

$$
\left|1+\frac{(\Delta t)}{2} \lambda_{j}\right|<\left|1-\frac{(\Delta t)}{2} \lambda_{j}\right|
$$

which holds for all $\Delta t>0$ since $\Re \lambda_{j}<0$.

Note that while the explicit and implicit Euler schemes are of order one, the Trapezoidal scheme is of order two.

REMARK 4.14. If $\Re \lambda_{j}=0$ for some $j$, then the explicit Euler scheme may be unstable for any $\Delta t>0$. Consider the second order linear equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}+x=0, \quad t \in[0,+\infty[  \tag{4.39}\\
x(0)=x_{0}, \frac{d x}{d t}(0)=x_{0}^{\prime}, \quad x_{0}, x_{0}^{\prime} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

We first reduce (4.39) to the first order linear equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d X}{d t}=A X, \quad t \in[0,+\infty[  \tag{4.40}\\
X(0)=\left(x_{0}, x_{0}^{\prime}\right)^{\top} \in \mathbb{R}^{2 d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $X=(x, d x / d t)^{\top}$ and $A=\left(\begin{array}{cc}0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0\end{array}\right)$. The eigenvalues of $A$ are $\pm i$. Consequently, the explicit Euler scheme is unstable since $|1 \pm \Delta t i|>1$ for any $\Delta t>0$. However, the implicit Euler scheme is stable since $|1 \pm \Delta t i|^{-1}<1$.

### 4.4. Runge-Kutta methods

The Runge-Kutta methods are by far the most popular and powerful general-purpose numerical methods for integrating ordinary differential equations.

The idea behind the Runge-Kutta methods is to evaluate $f$ at carefully chosen values of its arguments, $t$ and $x$, in order to create an approximation that is as accurate as a higher-order Taylor expansion of $x(t+\Delta t)$ without evaluating derivatives of $f$. Runge-Kutta schemes are time-stepping schemes that can be derived by matching multivariable Taylor series expansions of $f(t, x)$ with the Taylor series expansion of $x(t+\Delta t)$. To find the right values of $t$ and $x$ at which to evaluate $f$, we need to take a Taylor expansion of $f$ evaluated at these (unknown) values, and then match the resulting numerical scheme to a Taylor series expansion of $x(t+\Delta t)$ around $t$. Towards this, we state a generalization of Taylor's theorem to functions of two variables.

Theorem 4.15. Let $f(t, x) \in \mathcal{C}^{n+1}([0, T] \times \mathbb{R})$. Let $\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right) \in[0, T] \times \mathbb{R}$. There exist $t_{0} \leq \tau \leq t$, $x_{0} \leq \xi \leq x$, such that

$$
f(t, x)=P_{n}(t, x)+R_{n}(t, x)
$$

where $P_{n}(t, x)$ is the nth Taylor polynomial of $f$ around $\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
P_{n}(t, x)= & f\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)+\left[\left(t-t_{0}\right) \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)+\left(x-x_{0}\right) \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)\right] \\
& +\left[\frac{\left(t-t_{0}\right)^{2}}{2} \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial t^{2}}\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)+\left(t-t_{0}\right)\left(x-x_{0}\right) \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial t \partial x}\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)+\frac{\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{2}}{2} \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial x^{2}}\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)\right] \\
& \ldots+\left[\frac{1}{n!} \sum_{j=0}^{n} C_{j}^{n}\left(t-t_{0}\right)^{n-j}\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{j} \frac{\partial^{n} f}{\partial t^{n-j} \partial x^{j}}\left(t_{0}, x_{0}\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and $R_{n}(t, x)$ is the remainder term associated with $P_{n}(t, x)$,

$$
R_{n}(t, x)=\frac{1}{(n+1)!} \sum_{j=0}^{n+1} C_{j}^{n+1}\left(t-t_{0}\right)^{n+1-j}\left(x-x_{0}\right)^{j} \frac{\partial^{n+1} f}{\partial t^{n+1-j} \partial x^{j}}(\tau, \xi)
$$

We now illustrate the proposed approach in order to obtain a second-order accurate method, that is, its local truncation error is $O\left((\Delta t)^{2}\right)$. This involves matching

$$
x+\Delta t f(t, x)+\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{2}\left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)+\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, x) f(t, x)\right]+\frac{(\Delta t)^{3}}{6} \frac{d^{2}}{d t^{2}}[f(\tau, x)]
$$

to

$$
x+(\Delta t) f\left(t+\alpha_{1}, x+\beta_{1}\right),
$$

where $\tau \in[t, t+\Delta t]$ and $\alpha_{1}$ and $\beta_{1}$ are to be found. After simplifying by removing terms that already match, we see that we only need to match

$$
f(t, x)+\frac{(\Delta t)}{2}\left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)+\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, x) f(t, x)\right]+\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{6} \frac{d^{2}}{d t^{2}}[f(t, x)]
$$

with $f\left(t+\alpha_{1}, x+\beta_{1}\right)$ at least up to terms of the order of $O(\Delta t)$, so that the local truncation error will be $O\left((\Delta t)^{2}\right)$. Applying the multivariable version of Taylor's theorem to $f$, we obtain
$f\left(t+\alpha_{1}, x+\beta_{1}\right)=f(t, x)+\alpha_{1} \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x)+\beta_{1} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, x)+\frac{\alpha_{1}^{2}}{2} \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial t^{2}}(\tau, \xi)+\alpha_{1} \beta_{1} \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial t \partial x}(\tau, \xi)+\frac{\beta_{1}^{2}}{2} \frac{\partial^{2} f}{\partial x^{2}}(\tau, \xi)$,
where $t \leq \tau \leq t+\alpha_{1}$ and $x \leq \xi \leq x+\beta_{1}$. Hence comparing terms yields

$$
\alpha_{1}=\frac{\Delta t}{2} \quad \text { and } \quad \beta_{1}=\frac{\Delta t}{2} f(t, x)
$$

The resulting numerical scheme is therefore the explicit midpoint method 4.34 , which is the simplest example of a Runge-Kutta method of second order. The improved Euler method 4.32 is also another often-used Runge-Kutta method.

The most general Runge-Kutta method takes the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\Delta t \sum_{i=1}^{m} c_{i} f\left(t_{i, k}, x_{i, k}\right) \tag{4.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $m$ stands for the number of terms in the method. Each $t_{i, k}$ denotes a point in $\left[t_{k}, t_{k+1}\right]$. The second argument $x_{i, k} \approx x\left(t_{i, k}\right)$ can be viewed as an approximation to the solution at the point $t_{i, k}$, and so is computed by a similar but simpler formula of the same type. To construct an $n$th order Runge-Kutta method, we need to take at least $m \geq n$ terms in 4.41.

The best-known Runge-Kutta method is the fourth-order Runge-Kutta method, which uses four evaluations of $f$ during each step. The method proceeds as follows:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\kappa_{1}:=f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)  \tag{4.42}\\
\kappa_{2}:=f\left(t_{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2}, x^{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2} \kappa_{1}\right) \\
\kappa_{3}:=f\left(t_{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2}, x^{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2} \kappa_{2}\right) \\
\kappa_{4}:=f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k}+\Delta t \kappa_{3}\right) \\
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{6}\left(\kappa_{1}+2 \kappa_{2}+2 \kappa_{3}+\kappa_{4}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

In (4.42), the values of $f$ at the midpoint in time are given four times as much weight as values at the endpoints $t_{k}$ and $t_{k+1}$, which is similar to Simpson's rule 4.27) from numerical integration.
4.4.1. Construction of Runge-Kutta methods. In this subsection we first construct Runge-Kutta methods by generalizing collocation methods. Then we discuss their consistency, stability, and order.
4.4.1.1. Collocation methods. Let $\mathcal{P}_{m}$ denote the space of real polynomials of degree $\leq m$. Given a set of $m$ distinct quadrature points $c_{1}<c_{2}<\ldots<c_{m}$ in $\mathbb{R}$, and corresponding data $g_{1}, \ldots, g_{m}$, there exists a unique polynomial, called the interpolating polynomial, $P(t) \in \mathcal{P}_{m-1}$ satisfying $P\left(c_{i}\right)=g_{i}, i=1, \ldots, m$.

Define the $i$ th Lagrange interpolating polynomial $l_{i}(t), i=1, \ldots, m$, for the set of quadrature points $\left\{c_{j}\right\}$ by

$$
l_{i}(t):=\prod_{j \neq i, j=1}^{m} \frac{t-c_{j}}{c_{i}-c_{j}}
$$

The set of Lagrange interpolating polynomials form a basis of $\mathcal{P}_{m-1}$ and the interpolating polynomial $P$ corresponding to the data $\left\{g_{j}\right\}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
P(t):=\sum_{i=1}^{m} g_{i} l_{i}(t) \tag{4.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider first a smooth function $g$ on $[0,1]$. We can approximate the integral of $g$ on $[0,1]$ by exactly integrating the Lagrange interpolating polynomial of order $m-1$ based on $m$ quadrature points $0 \leq c_{1}<c_{2}<\ldots<c_{m} \leq 1$. The data are the values of $g$ at the quadrature points $g_{i}=g\left(c_{i}\right), i=1, \ldots, m$.

Define the weights

$$
\begin{equation*}
b_{i}=\int_{0}^{1} l_{i}(s) d s \tag{4.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

The quadrature formula is

$$
\int_{0}^{1} g(s) d s \approx \int_{0}^{1} P(s) d s=\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} g\left(c_{i}\right)
$$

where $P$ is defined by 4.43.
Now let $f$ be a smooth function on $[0, T]$ and let $t_{k}=k \Delta t$ for $k=0, \ldots, K=T /(\Delta t)$, be the discretization points in $[0, T]$. The integral $\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s) d s$ can be approximated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s) d s=(\Delta t) \int_{0}^{1} f\left(t_{k}+\Delta t \tau\right) d \tau \approx(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(t_{k}+(\Delta t) c_{i}\right) \tag{4.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next let $x$ be a polynomial of degree $m$ satisfying

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
x(0)=x_{0}  \tag{4.46}\\
\frac{d x}{d t}\left(c_{i} \Delta t\right)=F_{i}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $F_{i} \in \mathbb{R}, i=1, \ldots, m$.
From the Lagrange interpolation formula (4.43), it follows that for $t$ in the first time-step interval $[0, \Delta t]$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}(t)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} F_{i} l_{i}\left(\frac{t}{\Delta t}\right) \tag{4.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (4.47) over the intervals $\left[0, c_{i} \Delta t\right]$ gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(c_{i} \Delta t\right)=x_{0}+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} F_{j} \int_{0}^{c_{i}} l_{j}(s) d s=x_{0}+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} F_{j}, \quad i=1, \ldots, m \tag{4.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
a_{i j}:=\int_{0}^{c_{i}} l_{j}(s) d s \tag{4.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

Integrating (4.47) over $[0, \Delta t]$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(\Delta t)=x_{0}+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} F_{i} \int_{0}^{1} l_{i}(s) d s=x_{0}+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} F_{i} \tag{4.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $b_{i}$ is defined by 4.44).
Writing $d x / d t=f(x(t))$, we obtain from 4.48) and 4.50) on the first time step interval $[0, \Delta t]$

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
F_{i}=f\left(x_{0}+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} F_{j}\right), \quad i=1, \ldots, m  \tag{4.51}\\
x(\Delta t)=x_{0}+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} F_{i}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Similarly, we have on $\left[t_{k}, t_{k+1}\right]$

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
F_{i, k}=f\left(x\left(t_{k}\right)+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} F_{j, k}\right), \quad i=1, \ldots, m  \tag{4.52}\\
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)=x\left(t_{k}\right)+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} F_{i, k}
\end{array}\right.
$$

In the collocation method 4.52 , one first solves the coupled nonlinear system to obtain $F_{i, k}$, $i=1, \ldots, m$, and then computes $x\left(t_{k+1}\right)$ from $x\left(t_{k}\right)$.

Remark 4.16. Since

$$
t^{l-1}=\sum_{i=1}^{m} c_{i}^{l-1} l_{i}(t), \quad t \in[0,1], l=1, \ldots, m
$$

we have

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} c_{i}^{l-1}=\frac{1}{l}, \quad l=1, \ldots, m
$$

and

$$
\sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} c_{j}^{l-1}=\frac{c_{i}^{l}}{l}, \quad i, l=1, \ldots, m
$$

4.4.2. Runge-Kutta methods as generalized collocation methods. In 4.52, the coefficients $b_{i}$ and $a_{i j}$ are defined by certain integrals of the Lagrange interpolating polynomials associated with a chosen set of quadrature nodes $c_{i}, i=1, \ldots, m$.

A natural generalization of collocation methods is obtained by allowing the coefficients $c_{i}, b_{i}$, and $a_{i j}$ to take arbitrary values, not necessary related to quadrature formulas. In fact, we no longer assume the $c_{i}$ to be distinct. However, we should assume that

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{i}=\sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j}, \quad i=1, \ldots, m \tag{4.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

The result is the class of Runge-Kutta methods for solving 4.1), which can be written as

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
F_{i, k}=f\left(t_{i, k}, x^{k}+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} F_{j, k}\right)  \tag{4.54}\\
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} F_{i, k}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $t_{i, k}=t_{k}+c_{i} \Delta t$, or equivalently,

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
x_{i, k}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f\left(t_{j, k}, x_{j, k}\right)  \tag{4.55}\\
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(t_{i, k}, x_{i, k}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
\kappa_{j}:=f\left(t+c_{j} \Delta t, x_{j}\right) \tag{4.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

and define the function $\Phi$ by

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
x_{i}=x+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} \kappa_{j}  \tag{4.57}\\
\Phi(t, x, \Delta t)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(t+c_{i} \Delta t, x_{i}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

One can see that the scheme 4.55 is a one step method. Moreover, if $a_{i j}=0$ for $j \geq i$, then 4.55 is explicit.

It is also easy to see that with definition 4.55, explicit Euler's method and Trapezoidal scheme are Runge-Kutta methods. For example, explicit Euler's method 4.17) can be put into the form (4.55) with $m=1, b_{1}=1, a_{11}=0$. The Trapezoidal scheme 4.29) has $m=2, b_{1}=b_{2}=1 / 2, a_{11}=$ $a_{12}=0, a_{21}=a_{22}=1 / 2$. Finally, for the fourth-order Runge-Kutta method 4.42, we have $m=4, c_{1}=0, c_{2}=c_{3}=1 / 2, c_{4}=1, b_{1}=1 / 6, b_{2}=b_{3}=1 / 3, b_{4}=1 / 6, a_{21}=a_{32}=1 / 2, a_{43}=1$, and all the other $a_{i j}$ entries are zero.

### 4.4.3. Consistency, stability, convergence, and order of Runge-Kutta methods.

 From 4.57, the Runge-Kutta scheme is consistent if and only if$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=1}^{m} b_{j}=1 \tag{4.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $|A|$ be the matrix defined by $\left(\left|a_{i j}\right|\right)_{i, j=1}^{m}$. Let the spectral radius $\rho(|A|)$ of the matrix $|A|$ be defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho(|A|):=\max \left\{\left|\lambda_{j}\right|, \lambda_{j} \text { is an eigenvalue of }|A|\right\} \tag{4.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

The following stability result holds.
Theorem 4.17. Let $C_{f}$ be the Lipschitz constant for $f$. Suppose that

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\Delta t) C_{f} \rho(|A|)<1 \tag{4.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the Runge-Kutta method 4.55) for solving 4.1) is stable.
Proof. Let $\Phi$ be defined by 4.57). We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi(t, x, \Delta t)-\Phi(t, y, \Delta t)=\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i}\left[f\left(t+c_{i} \Delta t, x_{i}\right)-f\left(t+c_{i} \Delta t, y_{i}\right)\right] \tag{4.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{i}=x+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f\left(t+c_{j} \Delta t, x_{j}\right) \tag{4.62}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
y_{i}=y+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f\left(t+c_{j} \Delta t, y_{j}\right) \tag{4.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

Subtracting 4.63 from 4.62 yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{i}-y_{i}=x-y+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j}\left[f\left(t+c_{j} \Delta t, x_{j}\right)-f\left(t+c_{j} \Delta t, y_{j}\right)\right] \tag{4.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, for $i=1, \ldots, m$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x_{i}-y_{i}\right| \leq|x-y|+(\Delta t) C_{f} \sum_{j=1}^{m}\left|a_{i j}\right|\left|x_{j}-y_{j}\right| \tag{4.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $C_{f}$ is the Lipschitz constant for $f$. Let the vectors $X$ and $Y$ be defined by

$$
X=\left[\begin{array}{c}
\left|x_{1}-y_{1}\right| \\
\vdots \\
\left|x_{m}-y_{m}\right|
\end{array}\right] \quad \text { and } \quad Y=\left[\begin{array}{c}
|x-y| \\
\vdots \\
|x-y|
\end{array}\right]
$$

From 4.65, it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
X \leq Y+(\Delta t) C_{f}|A| X \tag{4.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

and therefore,

$$
\begin{equation*}
X \leq\left(I-(\Delta t) C_{f}|A|\right)^{-1} Y \tag{4.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

provided that condition 4.60 holds. Finally, combining 4.61 and 4.67 yields the stability of the Runge-Kutta scheme 4.55).

By the Dahlquist-Lax equivalence theorem (Theorem 4.4), it follows that the Runge-Kutta scheme 4.55 is convergent provided that 4.58 and 4.60 hold.

In order to establish the order of the Runge-Kutta scheme 4.55), we compute the order as $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ of the truncation error

$$
T_{k}(\Delta t)=\frac{x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)}{\Delta t}-\Phi\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right), \Delta t\right)
$$

where $\Phi$ is defined by 4.57). We write

$$
T_{k}(\Delta t)=\frac{x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)}{\Delta t}-\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(t_{k}+c_{i} \Delta t, x\left(t_{k}\right)+\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} \kappa_{j}\right)
$$

Suppose that $f$ is smooth enough. We have
$f\left(t_{k}+c_{i} \Delta t, x\left(t_{k}\right)+\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} \kappa_{j}\right)=f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+\Delta t\left[c_{i} \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+\left(\sum_{j=1} a_{i j} \kappa_{j}\right) \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right]+O\left((\Delta t)^{2}\right)$.
Suppose that 4.53 holds. Then, from

$$
\sum_{j=1} a_{i j} \kappa_{j}=\left(\sum_{j=1} a_{i j}\right) f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)=c_{i} f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+O(\Delta t)
$$

it follows that
$f\left(t_{k}+c_{i} \Delta t, x\left(t_{k}\right)+\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} \kappa_{j}\right)=f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+\Delta t c_{i}\left[\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right) f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)\right]+O\left((\Delta t)^{2}\right)$.
Therefore, we obtain the following theorem.
Theorem 4.18. Assume that $f$ is smooth enough. Then the Runge-Kutta scheme 4.55) for solving (4.1) is of order 2 provided that the conditions 4.58) and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} c_{i}=\frac{1}{2} \tag{4.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

hold.
One can prove by higher-order Taylor expansions that the following results hold.

Theorem 4.19. Assume that $f$ is smooth enough. Then the Runge-Kutta scheme (4.55) for solving (4.1) is of order 3 provided that the conditions 4.58, (4.68), and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} c_{i}^{2}=\frac{1}{3}, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{m} b_{i} a_{i j} c_{j}=\frac{1}{6} \tag{4.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

hold. It is of order 4 provided that 4.58, 4.68, 4.69, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} c_{i}^{3}=\frac{1}{4}, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{m} b_{i} c_{i} a_{i j} c_{j}=\frac{1}{8}, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{m} b_{i} c_{i} a_{i j} c_{j}^{2}=\frac{1}{12}, \quad \sum_{i=1}^{m} \sum_{j=1}^{m} \sum_{l=1}^{m} b_{i} a_{i j} a_{j l} c_{l}=\frac{1}{24} \tag{4.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

hold.
The Runge-Kutta scheme 4.42 , satisfies the four conditions 4.58, 4.68, 4.69), and 4.70). Hence, 4.42 is of order 4.

### 4.5. Multi-step methods

While Runge-Kutta methods present an improvement over Euler's methods in terms of accuracy, this is achieved by investing additional computational effort. For example, the fourth-order method 4.42 involves four function evaluations per step. For comparison, by considering three consecutive points $t_{k-1}, t_{k}, t_{k+1}$, integrating the differential equation between $t_{k-1}$ and $t_{k+1}$, and applying Simpson's rule to approximate the resulting integral yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
x\left(t_{k+1}\right) & =x\left(t_{k-1}\right)+\int_{t_{k-1}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s, x(s)) d s \\
& \approx x\left(t_{k-1}\right)+\frac{(\Delta t)}{3}\left[f\left(t_{k-1}, x\left(t_{k-1}\right)\right)+4 f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)+f\left(t_{k+1}, x\left(t_{k+1}\right)\right)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

which leads to the method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k-1}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{3}\left[f\left(t_{k-1}, x^{k-1}\right)+4 f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)+f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k+1}\right)\right] \tag{4.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

In contrast with the one-step methods considered in the previous sections where only a single value of $x^{k}$ was required to compute the next approximation $x^{k+1}$, in 4.71) we need two preceding values, $x^{k}$ and $x^{k-1}$ in order to calculate $x^{k+1}$, and therefore 4.71 is a two-step method.

The general $n$-step method is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=0}^{n} \alpha_{j} x^{k+j}=(\Delta t) \sum_{j=0}^{n} \beta_{j} f\left(t_{k+j}, x^{k+j}\right) \tag{4.72}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the coefficients $\alpha_{j}$ and $\beta_{j}$ are real constants and $\alpha_{n} \neq 0$.
If $\beta_{n}=0$, then $x^{k+n}$ is obtained explicitly from previous values of $x^{j}$ and $f\left(t_{j}, x^{j}\right)$, and the $n$-step method is explicit. Otherwise, the $n$-step method is implicit.

EXAmple 4.20. (i) The two-step Adams-Bashforth method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+2}=x^{k+1}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{2}\left[3 f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k+1}\right)-f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)\right] \tag{4.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an example of an explicit two-step method;
(ii) The three-step Adams-Bashforth method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+3}=x^{k+2}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{12}\left[23 f\left(t_{k+2}, x^{k+2}\right)-16 f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k+1}\right)+f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)\right] \tag{4.74}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an example of an explicit three-step method;
(iii) The four-step Adams-Bashforth method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+4}=x^{k+3}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{24}\left[55 f\left(t_{k+3}, x^{k+3}\right)-59 f\left(t_{k+2}, x^{k+2}\right)+37 f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k+1}\right)-9 f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)\right] \tag{4.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an example of an explicit four-step method;
(iv) The two-step Adams-Moulton method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+2}=x^{k+1}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{12}\left[5 f\left(t_{k+2}, x^{k+2}\right)+8 f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k+1}\right)+f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)\right] \tag{4.76}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an example of an implicit two-step method;
(v) The three-step Adams-Moulton method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+3}=x^{k+2}+\frac{(\Delta t)}{24}\left[9 f\left(t_{k+3}, x^{k+3}\right)+19 f\left(t_{k+2}, x^{k+2}\right)-5 f\left(t_{k+1}, x^{k+1}\right)-9 f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)\right] \tag{4.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

is an example of an implicit three-step method.
The construction of general classes of linear multi-step methods is discussed in the next subsection.
4.5.1. Construction of linear multi-step methods. Suppose that $x^{k}, k \in \mathbb{N}$, is a sequence of real numbers. We introduce the shift operator $E$, the forward difference operator $\Delta_{+}$and the backward difference operator $\Delta_{-}$by

$$
E: x^{k} \mapsto x^{k+1}, \quad \Delta_{+}: x^{k} \mapsto x^{k+1}-x^{k}, \quad \Delta_{-}: x^{k} \mapsto x^{k}-x^{k-1}
$$

Since $\Delta_{+}=E-I$ and $\Delta_{-}=I-E^{-1}$, it follows that, for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$
(E-I)^{n}=\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} C_{j}^{n} E^{n-j}
$$

and

$$
\left(I-E^{-1}\right)^{n}=\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} C_{j}^{n} E^{-j}
$$

Therefore,

$$
\Delta_{+}^{n} x^{k}=\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} C_{j}^{n} x^{k+n-j}
$$

and

$$
\Delta_{-}^{n} x^{k}=\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} C_{j}^{n} x^{k-j}
$$

Now let $y(t) \in \mathcal{C}^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ and let $t_{k}=k \Delta t, \Delta t>0$. By applying the Taylor series we find that, for any $s \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$
E^{s} y\left(t_{k}\right)=y\left(t_{k}+s \Delta t\right)=\left(\sum_{l=0}^{+\infty} \frac{1}{l!}\left(s \Delta t \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\right)^{l} y\right)\left(t_{k}\right)=\left(e^{s(\Delta t) \frac{\partial}{\partial t}} y\right)\left(t_{k}\right)
$$

and hence

$$
E^{s}=e^{s(\Delta t) \frac{\partial}{\partial t}}
$$

Thus, formally,

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\Delta t) \frac{\partial}{\partial t}=\ln E=-\ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)=\Delta_{-}+\frac{1}{2} \Delta_{-}^{2}+\frac{1}{3} \Delta_{-}^{3}+\ldots \tag{4.78}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, if $x(t)$ is the solution of 4.1, then by using 4.78 we find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)=\left(\Delta_{-}+\frac{1}{2} \Delta_{-}^{2}+\frac{1}{3} \Delta_{-}^{3}+\ldots\right) x\left(t_{k}\right) \tag{4.79}
\end{equation*}
$$

The successive truncation of the infinite series on the right-hand side of 4.79 yields

$$
\begin{align*}
& x^{k}-x^{k-1}=(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right) \\
& \frac{3}{2} x^{k}-2 x^{k-1}+\frac{1}{2} x^{k-2}=(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)  \tag{4.80}\\
& \frac{11}{6} x^{k}-3 x^{k-1}+\frac{3}{2} x^{k-2}-\frac{1}{3} x^{k-3}=(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

and so on. This gives rise to a class of implicit multi-step methods called backward differentiation formulas.

Similarly,

$$
E^{-1}\left((\Delta t) \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\right)=(\Delta t) \frac{\partial}{\partial t} E^{-1}=-\left(I-\Delta_{-}\right) \ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)
$$

and hence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left((\Delta t) \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\right)=-E\left(I-\Delta_{-}\right) \ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)=-\left(I-\Delta_{-}\right) \ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right) E \tag{4.81}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, if $x(t)$ is the solution of 4.1), then we find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)=\left(\Delta_{-}-\frac{1}{2} \Delta_{-}^{2}-\frac{1}{6} \Delta_{-}^{3}+\ldots\right) x\left(t_{k+1}\right) \tag{4.82}
\end{equation*}
$$

The successive truncation of the infinite series on the right-hand side of 4.82 yields the following explicit numerical schemes:

$$
\begin{align*}
& x^{k+1}-x^{k}=(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right) \\
& \frac{1}{2} x^{k+1}-\frac{1}{2} x^{k-1}=(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right) \\
& \frac{1}{3} x^{k+1}+\frac{1}{2} x^{k}-x^{k-1}+\frac{1}{6} x^{k-2}=(\Delta t) f\left(t_{k}, x^{k}\right) \tag{4.83}
\end{align*}
$$

The first of these numerical scheme is the explicit Euler method, while the second is the explicit mid-point method.

In order to construct further classes of multi-step methods, we define, for $y \in \mathcal{C}^{\infty}$,

$$
D^{-1} y\left(t_{k}\right)=y\left(t_{0}\right)+\int_{t_{0}}^{t_{k}} y(s) d s
$$

and observe that

$$
(E-I) D^{-1} y\left(t_{k}\right)=\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} y(s) d s
$$

Now, from

$$
(E-I) D^{-1}=\Delta_{+} D^{-1}=E \Delta_{-} D^{-1}=(\Delta t) E \Delta_{-}((\Delta t) D)^{-1}
$$

it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
(E-I) D^{-1}=-(\Delta t) E \Delta_{-}\left(\ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)\right)^{-1} \tag{4.84}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore,

$$
(E-I) D^{-1}=E \Delta_{-} D^{-1}=\Delta_{-} E D^{-1}=\Delta_{-}\left(D E^{-1}\right)^{-1}=(\Delta t) \Delta_{-}\left((\Delta t) D E^{-1}\right)^{-1}
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
(E-I) D^{-1}=-(\Delta t) \Delta_{-}\left(\left(I-\Delta_{-}\right) \ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)\right)^{-1} \tag{4.85}
\end{equation*}
$$

By using 4.84 and 4.85, we deduce from

$$
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)=\int_{t_{k}}^{t_{k+1}} f(s, x(s)) d s=(E-I) D^{-1} f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)
$$

that

$$
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
-(\Delta t) \Delta_{-}\left(\left(I-\Delta_{-}\right) \ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)\right)^{-1} f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)  \tag{4.86}\\
-(\Delta t) E \Delta_{-}\left(\ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)\right)^{-1} f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $x(t)$ is the solution of (4.1).
On expanding $\ln \left(I-\Delta_{-}\right)$into a Taylor series on the right-hand side of 4.86) we find that

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)=(\Delta t)\left[I+\frac{1}{2} \Delta_{-}+\frac{5}{12} \Delta_{-}^{2}+\frac{3}{8} \Delta_{-}^{3}+\ldots\right] f\left(t_{k}, x\left(t_{k}\right)\right) \tag{4.87}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
x\left(t_{k+1}\right)-x\left(t_{k}\right)=(\Delta t)\left[I-\frac{1}{2} \Delta_{-}-\frac{1}{12} \Delta_{-}^{2}-\frac{1}{24} \Delta_{-}^{3}+\ldots\right] f\left(t_{k+1}, x\left(t_{k+1}\right)\right) \tag{4.88}
\end{equation*}
$$

The successive truncation of (4.87) yields the family 4.75) of (explicit) Adams-Bashforth methods, while similar successive truncation of 4.88 gives rise to the family 4.77) of (implicit) AdamsMoulton methods.
4.5.2. Consistency, stability, and convergence. In this subsection, we introduce the concepts of consistency, stability, and convergence for analyzing linear multi-step methods.

Definition 4.21 (Consistency). The n-step method (4.72) is consistent with (4.1) if the truncation error defined by

$$
T_{k}=\frac{\sum_{j=0}^{n}\left[\alpha_{j} x\left(t_{k+j}\right)-(\Delta t) \beta_{j} \frac{d x}{d t}\left(t_{k+j}\right)\right]}{(\Delta t) \sum_{j=0}^{n} \beta_{j}}
$$

is such that for any $\epsilon>0$ there exists $h_{0}$ for which

$$
\left|T_{k}\right| \leq \epsilon \quad \text { for } 0<\Delta t \leq h_{0}
$$

and any $(n+1)$ points $\left(\left(t_{j}, x\left(t_{j}\right)\right), \ldots,\left(t_{j+n}, x\left(t_{j+n}\right)\right)\right)$ on any solution $x(t)$.
Definition 4.22 (Stability). The n-step method (4.72) is stable if there exists a constant $C$ such that, for any two sequences $\left(x^{k}\right)$ and $\left(\widetilde{x}^{k}\right)$ which have been generated by the same formulas but different initial data $x^{0}, x^{1}, \ldots, x^{k-1}$ and $\widetilde{x}^{0}, \widetilde{x}^{1}, \ldots, \widetilde{x}^{k-1}$, respectively, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x^{k}-\widetilde{x}^{k}\right| \leq C \max \left\{\left|x^{0}-\widetilde{x}^{0}\right|,\left|x^{1}-\widetilde{x}^{1}\right|, \ldots,\left|x^{k-1}-\widetilde{x}^{k-1}\right|\right\} \tag{4.89}
\end{equation*}
$$

as $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$.
Theorem 4.23 (Convergence). Suppose that the n-step method 4.72) is consistent with 4.1). The stability condition (4.89) is necessary and sufficient for the convergence. Moreover, if $x \in \mathcal{C}^{p+1}$ and the truncation error $O\left((\Delta t)^{p}\right)$, then the global error $e_{k}=x\left(t_{k}\right)-x^{k}$ is also $O\left((\Delta t)^{p}\right)$.

### 4.6. Stiff equations and systems

Let $\epsilon>0$ be a small parameter. Consider the initial value problem

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x(t)}{\mathrm{d} t} & =-\frac{1}{\epsilon} x(t), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{4.90}\\
x(0) & =1
\end{align*}\right.
$$

which has an exponential solution $x(t)=e^{-t / \epsilon}$. The explicit Euler method with step size $\Delta t$ relies on the iterative scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=\left(1-\frac{\Delta t}{\epsilon}\right) x^{k}, \quad x^{0}=1 \tag{4.91}
\end{equation*}
$$

with solution

$$
x^{k}=\left(1-\frac{\Delta t}{\epsilon}\right)^{k} .
$$

Since $\epsilon>0$ the exact solution is exponentially decaying and positive. But now, if $1-\frac{\Delta t}{\epsilon}<-1$, then the iterates 4.91) grow exponentially fast in magnitude, with alternating signs. In this case, the numerical solution is nowhere close to the true solution. If $-1<1-\frac{\Delta t}{\epsilon}<0$, then the
numerical solution decays in magnitude, but continue to alternate between positive and negative values. Thus, to correctly model the qualitative features of the solution and obtain a numerically accurate solution, we need to choose the step size $\Delta t$ so as to ensure that $1-\frac{\Delta t}{\epsilon}>0$, and hence $\Delta t<\epsilon$.

Equation 4.90 is the simplest example of what is known as a stiff differential equation. In general, an equation or system is stiff if it has one or more very rapidly decaying solutions. In the case of the autonomous constant coefficient linear system (3.24), stiffness occurs whenever the coefficient matrix $A$ has an eigenvalues $\lambda_{j_{0}}$ with large negative real part: $\Re \lambda_{j_{0}} \ll 0$, resulting in a very rapidly decaying eigensolution. It only takes one such eigensolution to render the equation stiff, and ruin the numerical computation of even well behaved solutions. Even though the component of the actual solution corresponding to $\lambda_{j_{0}}$ is almost irrelevant, as it becomes almost instantaneously tiny, its presence continues to render the numerical solution to the system very difficult. Stiff equations require more sophisticated numerical schemes to integrate.

Most of the numerical methods derived above also suffer from instability due to stiffness of (4.90) for sufficiently small positive $\epsilon$. Interestingly, stability of 4.90 suffices to characterize acceptable step sizes $\Delta t$, depending on the size of $-1 / \epsilon$, which, in the case of linear systems, is the eigenvalue. Applying the Trapezoidal scheme 4.29 to 4.90 leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}-\frac{\Delta t}{2 \epsilon}\left(x^{k}+x^{k+1}\right), \quad x^{0}=1 \tag{4.92}
\end{equation*}
$$

which we solve for

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=\frac{1-\frac{\Delta t}{2 \epsilon}}{1+\frac{\Delta t}{2 \epsilon}} x^{k}, \quad x^{0}=1 \tag{4.93}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, the behavior of the numerical solution is entirely determined by the size of the coefficient

$$
\mu:=\frac{1-\frac{\Delta t}{2 \epsilon}}{1+\frac{\Delta t}{2 \epsilon}}
$$

Since $|\mu|<1$ for all $\epsilon>0$, the Trapezoidal scheme 4.92 is not affected by stiffness.
In the system of equations (1.5), the parameter satisfies $0<a \ll 1$. This makes 1.5 a stiff system of ODEs.

### 4.7. Perturbation theories for differential equations

4.7.1. Regular perturbation theory. Let $\epsilon>0$ be a small parameter and consider the differential equation

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =f(t, x, \epsilon), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{4.94}\\
x(0) & =x_{0}, \quad x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}
\end{align*}\right.
$$

If we suppose that $f \in \mathcal{C}^{1}$, then 4.94 is a regular perturbation problem. The solution $x(t, \epsilon)$ is in $\mathcal{C}^{1}$ and has the following Taylor expansion:

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t, \epsilon)=x^{(0)}(t)+\epsilon x^{(1)}(t)+o(\epsilon) \tag{4.95}
\end{equation*}
$$

with respect to $\epsilon$ in a neighborhood of 0 .
Clearly, the unperturbed term $x^{(0)}$ is given as the solution of the unperturbed equation

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{(0)}}{\mathrm{d} t} & =f_{0}\left(t, x^{(0)}\right), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{4.96}\\
x^{(0)}(0) & =x_{0}, \quad x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}
\end{align*}\right.
$$

where $f_{0}(t, x):=f(t, x, 0)$. Moreover, the first-order correction term $x^{(1)}$, which is the derivative of $x(t, \epsilon)$ with respect to $\epsilon$ at 0 ,

$$
x^{(1)}(t)=\frac{\partial x}{\partial \epsilon}(t, 0),
$$

solves the equation

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x^{(1)}}{\mathrm{d} t} & =\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\left(t, x^{(0)}, 0\right) x^{(1)}+\frac{\partial f}{\partial \epsilon}\left(t, x^{(0)}, 0\right), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{4.97}\\
x^{(1)}(0) & =0
\end{align*}\right.
$$

The initial condition $x^{(1)}(0)=0$ follows from the fact that the initial condition $x_{0}$ does not depend on $\epsilon$.

The numerical methods described in Section 4.4 can be used to efficiently compute the unperturbed solution $x^{(0)}$ and the first-order correction $x^{(1)}$.

REmark 4.24. Consider the equation

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} x}{\mathrm{~d} t} & =-\epsilon x+1, \quad t \in[0,+\infty[  \tag{4.98}\\
x(0) & =0
\end{align*}\right.
$$

The solution can be easily found

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t, \epsilon)=\frac{e^{-\epsilon t}-1}{\epsilon} \tag{4.99}
\end{equation*}
$$

If we apply the perturbation theory to (4.98), then by solving 4.96) and 4.97) with

$$
f(t, x, \epsilon)=-\epsilon x+1
$$

we find

$$
x^{(0)}(t)=-t \quad \text { and } \quad x^{(1)}(t)=\frac{t^{2}}{2}
$$

which gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t, \epsilon)=-t+\epsilon \frac{t^{2}}{2}+o(\epsilon) \tag{4.100}
\end{equation*}
$$

The approximation 4.100) of course coincides with the Taylor expansion of the exact solution given by 4.99). However, note that the approximation is valid only for fixed $t=O(1)$ and diverges to $+\infty$ as $t$ increases while the exact solution converges to $-1 / \epsilon$. The limits $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$ and $t \rightarrow+\infty$ do not commute. Expansion 4.100) is not uniformly valid in time.
4.7.2. Singular perturbation theory. In this subsection we consider a system of ordinary differential equations (together with appropriate boundary conditions) in which the highest derivative is multiplied by a small, positive parameter $\epsilon$. In what follows we give the general (nonlinear) form of the system:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\epsilon \frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}=f\left(t, x, \frac{d x}{d t}\right), \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{4.101}\\
x(0)=x_{0}, \quad x(T)=x_{1}
\end{array}\right.
$$

The problem above is called a singular perturbation problem, and is characterized by the fact that its order reduces when the problem parameter $\epsilon$ equals zero. In such a situation, the problem becomes singular since, in general, not all of the original boundary conditions can be satisfied by the reduced problem. Singular perturbed problems form a particular class of stiff problems.

Consider the following linear, scalar and of second-order ODE which is subject to Dirichlet boundary conditions:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\epsilon \frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}+2 \frac{d x}{d t}+x=0, \quad t \in[0,1]  \tag{4.102}\\
x(0)=0, \quad x(1)=1
\end{array}\right.
$$

Let

$$
\alpha(\epsilon):=\frac{1-\sqrt{1-\epsilon}}{\epsilon} \quad \text { and } \quad \beta(\epsilon):=1+\sqrt{1-\epsilon}
$$

The solution of equation 4.102 is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t, \epsilon)=\frac{e^{-\alpha t}-e^{-\beta t / \epsilon}}{e^{-\alpha}-e^{-\beta / \epsilon}}, \quad t \in[0,1] . \tag{4.103}
\end{equation*}
$$

The solution $x(t, \epsilon)$ involves two terms which vary on widely different length-scales. Let us consider the behavior of $x(t, \epsilon)$ as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0^{+}$. The asymptotic behavior is nonuniform, and there are two cases, which lead to matching outer and inner solutions.
(i) Outer limit: $t>0$ fixed and $\epsilon \rightarrow 0^{+}$. Then $x(t, \epsilon) \rightarrow x^{(0)}(t)$, where

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{(0)}(t):=e^{(1-t) / 2} \tag{4.104}
\end{equation*}
$$

This leading-order outer solution satisfies the boundary condition at $t=1$ but not the boundary condition at $t=0$. Indeed, $x^{(0)}(0)=e^{1 / 2}$.
(ii) Inner limit: $t / \epsilon=\tau$ fixed and $\epsilon \rightarrow 0^{+}$. Then $x(\epsilon \tau, \epsilon) \rightarrow X^{(0)}(\tau):=e^{1 / 2}\left(1-e^{-2 \tau}\right)$. This leading-order inner solution satisfies the boundary condition at $t=0$ but not the one at $t=1$, which corresponds to $\tau=1 / \epsilon$. Indeed, $\lim _{\tau \rightarrow+\infty} X^{(0)}(\tau)=e^{1 / 2}$.
(iii) Matching: Both the inner and outer expansions are valid in the region $\epsilon \ll t \ll 1$, corresponding to $t \rightarrow 0$ and $\tau \rightarrow+\infty$ as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0^{+}$. They satisfy the matching condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lim _{t \rightarrow 0^{+}} x^{(0)}(t)=\lim _{\tau \rightarrow+\infty} X^{(0)}(\tau) \tag{4.105}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let us now construct an asymptotic solution of 4.102 without relying on the fact that we can solve it exactly.

We begin with the outer solution. We look for a straightforward expansion

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t, \epsilon)=x^{(0)}(t)+\epsilon x^{(1)}(t)+O\left(\epsilon^{2}\right) \tag{4.106}
\end{equation*}
$$

We use this expansion in 4.102 and equate the coefficients of the leading-order terms to zero. Guided by our analysis of the exact solution, we only impose the boundary condition at $t=1$. We will see later that matching is impossible if, instead, we attempt to impose the boundary condition at $t=0$. We obtain that

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
2 \frac{d x^{(0)}}{d t}+x^{(0)}=0, \quad t \in[0,1]  \tag{4.107}\\
x^{(0)}(1)=1
\end{array}\right.
$$

The solution of 4.107) is given by 4.104, in agreement with the expansion of the exact solution $x(t, \epsilon)$.

Next we consider the inner solution. We suppose that there is a boundary layer at $t=0$ of width $\delta(\epsilon)$, and introduce a stretched variable $\tau=t / \delta$. We look for an inner solution $X(\tau, \epsilon)=x(t, \epsilon)$. Since

$$
\frac{d}{d t}=\frac{1}{\delta} \frac{d}{d \tau}
$$

we find from 4.102 that $X$ satisfies

$$
\frac{\epsilon}{\delta^{2}} \frac{d^{2} X}{d \tau^{2}}+\frac{2}{\delta} \frac{d X}{d \tau}+X=0
$$

There are two possible dominant balances in this equation:
(i) $\delta=1$, leading to the outer solution;
(ii) $\delta=\epsilon$, leading to the inner solution.

Thus we conclude that the boundary layer thickness is of the order of $\epsilon$, and the appropriate inner variable is $\tau=t / \epsilon$. The equation for $X$ is then

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d^{2} X}{d \tau^{2}}+2 \frac{d X}{d \tau}+\epsilon X=0 \\
X(0, \epsilon)=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

We impose only the boundary condition at $\tau=0$, since we do not expect the inner expansion to be valid outside the boundary layer where $t=O(\epsilon)$.

We seek an inner expansion

$$
X(\tau, \epsilon)=X^{(0)}(\tau)+\epsilon X^{(1)}(\tau)+O\left(\epsilon^{2}\right)
$$

and find that

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d^{2} X^{(0)}}{d \tau^{2}}+2 \frac{d X^{(0)}}{d \tau}=0  \tag{4.108}\\
X^{(0)}(0)=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

The general solution of 4.108 is

$$
\begin{equation*}
X^{(0)}(\tau)=c\left(1-e^{-2 \tau}\right) \tag{4.109}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $c$ is an arbitrary constant of integration.
We can determine the unknown constant $c$ in 4.109 by requiring that the inner solution 4.109 matches with the outer solution 4.104. Here the matching condition is simply

$$
\lim _{t \rightarrow 0^{+}} x^{(0)}(t)=\lim _{\tau \rightarrow+\infty} X^{(0)}(\tau)
$$

which implies that $c=e^{1 / 2}$.
In summary, the asymptotic solution as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0^{+}$is given by

$$
x(t, \epsilon)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
e^{1 / 2}\left(1-e^{-2 \tau}\right) \quad \text { as } \epsilon \rightarrow 0^{+} \text {with } t / \epsilon \text { fixed } \\
e^{(1-t) / 2} \quad \text { as } \epsilon \rightarrow 0^{+} \text {with } t \text { fixed }
\end{array}\right.
$$

### 4.7.3. WKB approximations.

4.7.3.1. Schrödinger equation. Consider the Schrödinger equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
i \epsilon \frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t}(t, x)+\epsilon^{2} \frac{\partial^{2} \Psi}{\partial x^{2}}(t, x)-V(x) \Psi(t, x)=0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, t \geq 0  \tag{4.110}\\
\Psi(0, x)=\Psi_{0}(x), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $\epsilon \ll 1$ and $V(x)>0$.
Write

$$
\Psi(t, x)=e^{i \frac{S(t, x)}{\epsilon}} .
$$

It follows that

$$
-\frac{\partial S}{\partial t}-\left(\frac{\partial S}{\partial x}\right)^{2}+i \epsilon \frac{\partial^{2} S}{\partial x^{2}}-V(x) S=0
$$

Hence, the leading order term in the asymptotic expansion with respect to $\epsilon$

$$
S(t, x)=S^{(0)}(t, x)+\epsilon S^{(1)}(t, x)+\ldots
$$

satisfies the Hamilton-Jacobi type equation

$$
\frac{\partial S^{(0)}}{\partial t}(t, x)+\left(\frac{\partial S^{(0)}}{\partial x}\right)^{2}(t, x)+V(x) S^{(0)}(t, x)=0
$$

4.7.4. Wave equation. Consider the Helmholtz equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\epsilon^{2} \frac{d^{2} \Psi}{d x^{2}}(x)+V(x) \Psi(x)=0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}\right. \tag{4.111}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\epsilon \ll 1$ and $V(x)>0$.
Using the ansatz

$$
\Psi(x)=a(x, \epsilon) e^{\frac{S(x)}{\epsilon}}=\left(a^{(0)}(x)+\epsilon a^{(1)}(x)+\ldots\right) e^{\frac{S(x)}{\epsilon}}
$$

it follows that

$$
\left(-\left|\frac{d S}{d x}\right|^{2}+V\right)+2 i \epsilon \frac{d S}{d x} \frac{d a}{d x}+i \epsilon a \frac{d^{2} S}{d x^{2}}+\epsilon^{2} \frac{d^{2} a}{d x^{2}}=0
$$

Therefore, the phase $S$ is solution to the eikonal equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\frac{d S}{d x}\right|^{2}(x)=V(x) \tag{4.112}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the leading order term $a^{(0)}$ in the asymptotic expansion of the amplitude $a(x, \epsilon)$ with respect to $\epsilon$ satisfies the transport equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \frac{d S}{d x} \frac{d a^{(0)}}{d x}+a^{(0)} \frac{d^{2} S}{d x^{2}}=0 \tag{4.113}
\end{equation*}
$$

Problem 4.25. (i) Prove Proposition 4.12.
(ii) Prove estimate (4.31).

## CHAPTER 5

## Geometrical numerical integration methods for differential equations

### 5.1. Introduction

Geometric integration is the numerical integration of a differential equation, while preserving one or more of its geometric properties exactly, i.e., to within round-off error. Many of these geometric properties are of crucial importance in physical applications: preservation of energy, momentum, volume, symmetries, time-reversal symmetry, dissipation, and symplectic structure being examples. The aim of this chapter is to present geometric numerical integration methods for ordinary differential equations. We concentrate mainly on Hamiltonian systems and on methods that preserve their symplectic structure, invariants, symmetries, or volume.

### 5.2. Structure preserving methods for Hamiltonian systems

The numerical methods discussed in Chapter 4 are designed for general differential equations, and a distinction was drawn only between stiff and nonstiff problems. As shown in Chapter 1, Hamiltonian systems are an important class of differential equations with a geometric structure (their flow has the geometric property of being symplectic), whose preservation in the numerical discretization leads to substantially better methods, especially when integrating over long times. In general, most geometric properties are not preserved by the standard numerical methods presented in Chapter 4

Some of the reasons we are motivated to preserve structure are
(i) it may yield methods that are faster, simpler, more stable, and/or more accurate for some types of ODEs;
(ii) it may yield more robust and quantitatively better results than standard methods for the long-time integration of Hamiltonian systems.
The standard problem in numerical ODEs discussed in the previous chapter is to compute the solution to an initial value problem at a fixed time, to within a given global error, as efficiently as possible. The class of method, its order and local error, and choice of time steps are all tailored to this end. In contrast, a typical application of a geometric numerical method is to fix a (sometimes moderately large) time step and compute solutions with perhaps many different initial conditions over very long time intervals.
5.2.1. Symplectic methods. Consider the Hamiltonian system

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\mathrm{d} p}{\mathrm{~d} t}=-\frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(p, q)  \tag{5.1}\\
\frac{\mathrm{d} q}{\mathrm{~d} t}=\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(p, q) \\
p(0)=p_{0}, q(0)=q_{0}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $p_{0}, q_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{d}$, and the Hamiltonian function $H: \mathbb{R}^{d} \times \mathbb{R}^{d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a smooth function.

Let $x=(p, q)^{\top}$. The Hamiltonian system of equations 5.1) can be rewritten as a first-order differential equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(x)  \tag{5.2}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{2 d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $x_{0}=\left(p_{0}, q_{0}\right)^{\top}$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
f: & \mathbb{R}^{2 d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2 d} \\
& x \mapsto J^{-1} \nabla H(x) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Definition 5.1. Let $J$ be defined by (1.26). A numerical one-step method ( $p^{k+1}, q^{k+1}$ ) $=$ $\Phi_{\Delta t}\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right)$ for solving (5.1) is called symplectic if the numerical flow $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ is a symplectic map:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}(p, q)^{\top} J \Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}(p, q)=J \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $(p, q)$ and all step sizes $\Delta t$.

### 5.2.2. Symplectic Euler methods.

ThEOREM 5.2. The implicit Euler method for solving (5.1)

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
p^{k+1}=p^{k}-\Delta t \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\left(p^{k+1}, q^{k}\right)  \tag{5.4}\\
q^{k+1}=q^{k}+\Delta t \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\left(p^{k+1}, q^{k}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

is symplectic. Moreover, if the Hamiltonian function $H(p, q)=T(p)+V(q)$ is separable, then (5.4) is explicit.

Proof. Let $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ be the numerical flow associated with (5.4). We have

$$
\Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right)=\frac{\partial\left(p^{k+1}, q^{k+1}\right)}{\partial\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right)}
$$

From

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I+\Delta t \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p \partial q} & 0  \tag{5.5}\\
-\Delta t \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p^{2}} & I
\end{array}\right) \Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
I & -\Delta t \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial q^{2}} \\
0 & I+\Delta t \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p \partial q}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where the matrices $\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p^{2}}, \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial q^{2}}$, and $\frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial p^{2}}$ are evaluated at $\left(p^{k+1}, q^{k}\right)$, one can easily verify by computing $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right)$ from 5.5 that the symplecticity condition 5.3 holds.

A variant of 5.4 is

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
p^{k+1} & =p^{k}-\Delta t \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\left(p^{k}, q^{k+1}\right)  \tag{5.6}\\
q^{k+1} & =q^{k}+\Delta t \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\left(p^{k}, q^{k+1}\right)
\end{align*}\right.
$$

Analogously to (5.4), the Euler method (5.6) is symplectic and turns out to be explicit for separable Hamiltonian functions.

### 5.2.3. Composition of symplectic methods.

Theorem 5.3. The composition of two symplectic one-step methods for solving (5.1) is also symplectic.

Proof. Let $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}$ and $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}$ be the numerical flows associated with two symplectic one-step methods for solving 5.1. Let $\Phi_{\Delta t}:=\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}$. We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top} J \Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}(x) & =\left(\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top} J\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x) \\
& =\left(\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top}\left(\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\right)^{\top} J\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x) \\
& =\left(\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top} J\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)=J,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $x^{*}=\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}(x)$. That is, the composition of symplectic one-step methods is again a symplectic one-step method.
5.2.4. The adjoint method. The flow $\phi_{t}$ of an autonomous differential equation $d x / d t=$ $f(x)$ satisfies $\phi_{-t}^{-1}=\phi_{t}$. This property is in general not satisfied by the one-step map $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ of a numerical method.

Definition 5.4. The adjoint method $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}$ of a method $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ is the inverse map of the original method with reversed time step $-\Delta$, i.e.,

$$
\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}:=\Phi_{-\Delta t}^{-1} .
$$

In other terms, $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}$ is defined by replacing, in the method associated with $\Phi_{\Delta t}, \Delta t$ by $-\Delta t$ and exchanging the superscripts $k$ and $k+1$.

The adjoint method satisfies the usual properties.
Proposition 5.5. We have
(i) $\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}\right)^{*}=\Phi_{\Delta t}$;
(ii) $\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{*}=\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{*} \circ\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{*}$ for any two one-step methods $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}$ and $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}$;
(iii) $\left(\Phi_{\Delta t / 2} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{*}\right)^{*}=\Phi_{\Delta t / 2} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{*}$.
5.2.5. Leapfrog method. Define the leapfrog method (Verlet method and Strömer-Verlet method are also often-used names) for solving the Hamiltonian system (5.1) by

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{r}
p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}=p^{k}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k}\right)  \tag{5.7}\\
q^{k+1}=q^{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2}\left(\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k}\right)+\frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k+1}\right)\right) \\
p^{k+1}=p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k+1}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

Theorem 5.6. The leapfrog method (5.7) for solving the Hamiltonian system (5.1) is symplectic.

Proof. The leapfrog method (5.7) can be interpreted as the composition of the symplectric Euler method

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}=p^{k}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k}\right)  \tag{5.8}\\
q^{k+\frac{1}{2}}=q^{k}+\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

and its adjoint

$$
\left\{\begin{align*}
q^{k+1} & =q^{k+\frac{1}{2}}+\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k+1}\right)  \tag{5.9}\\
p^{k+1} & =p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}, q^{k+1}\right)
\end{align*}\right.
$$

In other terms, if $\Psi_{\Delta t}$ denotes the numerical flow associated with the leapfrog method and $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ the one associated with the symplectic Euler method (5.4), then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{\Delta t}=\Phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{*} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t / 2} \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The methods 5.8 and 5.9 are symplectic. Hence their composition (5.7) is also symplectic.

### 5.2.6. Preserving time-reversal symmetry and invariants.

5.2.6.1. Preserving time-reversal symmetry. The leapfrog method 5 5.7) is symmetric with respect to changing the direction of time: replacing $\Delta t$ by $-\Delta t$ and exchanging the superscripts $k$ and $k+1$ results in the same method. In terms of the numerical one-step map $\Phi_{\Delta t}:\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right) \mapsto$ $\left(p^{k+1}, q^{k+1}\right)$, the symmetry property is stated as follows.

DEFINITION 5.7. The numerical one-step map $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ is said to be symmetric if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{\Delta t}=\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}\left(=\Phi_{-\Delta t}^{-1}\right) \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Relation (5.11) does not hold for the symplectic Euler methods (5.8) and 5.9), where the time reflection transforms 5.8 to 5.9 and vice versa.

The time-symmetry of the leapfrog method 5.7), which follows from 5.10 and item (iii) in Proposition 5.5 implies an important geometric property of the numerical map, namely reversibility.

Assume that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(-p, q)=H(p, q) \tag{5.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then the system (5.1) has the property that inverting the direction of the initial $p_{0}$ does not change the solution trajectory. The flow $\phi_{t}$ associated with (5.1) satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{t}\left(p_{0}, q_{0}\right)=(p, q) \Rightarrow \phi_{t}(-p, q)=\left(-p_{0}, q_{0}\right) \tag{5.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Relation 5.13) shows that $\phi_{t}$ is reversible with respect to the reflection $(p, q) \mapsto(-p, q)$.
DEFINITION 5.8. The numerical one-step map $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ is said to be reversible if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{\Delta t}(p, q)=(\hat{p}, \hat{q}) \Rightarrow \Phi_{\Delta t}(-\hat{p}, \hat{q})=(-p, q), \tag{5.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $p, q$ and all $\Delta t$.
Since

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{\Delta t}(p, q)=(\hat{p}, \hat{q}) \Rightarrow \Phi_{-\Delta t}(-p, q)=(-\hat{p}, \hat{q}) \tag{5.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

the symmetry (5.11) of the leapfrog method (5.7) is therefore equivalent to the reversibility (5.13).
Theorem 5.9. The leapfrog method (5.7) applied to (5.1) with $H$ satisfying (5.12) is both symmetric and reversible, i.e., its one-step map satisfies 5.11) and 5.13).

REMARK 5.10. The composition with the adjoint method turns every consistent one-step method of order one into a second-order symmetric method

$$
\Psi_{\Delta t}=\Phi_{\Delta t / 2} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{*}
$$

### 5.2.6.2. Preserving invariants.

Definition 5.11. A numerical one-step method $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ for solving (5.2) is said to preserve the invariant $F$ if $F\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}(p, q)\right)=$ Constant for all $p, q$ and all $\Delta t$. If $F=H$, then we say that the scheme preserves energy.

Theorem 5.12. The leapfrog method (5.7) applied to (5.1) preserves linear invariants and quadratic invariants of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
F(p, q)=p^{\top}(B q+b) \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. Let the linear invariant be $F(p, q)=b^{\top} q+c^{\top} p$, so that

$$
b^{\top} \frac{\partial H}{\partial p}(p, q)-c^{\top} \frac{\partial H}{\partial q}(p, q)=0
$$

for all $p, q$. Multiplying the formulas for $\Phi_{\Delta t}(p, q)$ in 5.7 by $(c, b)^{\top}$ thus yields the desired result on linear invariants.

Next we turn to the conservation by the leapfrog method of quadratic invariants of the form (5.16). In order to prove that (5.7) applied to (5.1) preserves quadratic invariants of the form $F(p, q)=p^{\top}(B q+b)$, we write 5.7) as the composition of the two symplectic Euler methods (5.8) and 5.9 . For the first half-step, we obtain

$$
\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}\right)^{\top}\left(B q^{k+\frac{1}{2}}+b\right)=\left(p^{k}\right)^{\top}\left(B q^{k}+b\right)
$$

For the second half-step, we obtain in the same way

$$
\left(p^{k+1}\right)^{\top}\left(B q^{k+1}+b\right)=\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}\right)^{\top}\left(B q^{k+\frac{1}{2}}+b\right)
$$

and the result follows.
The energy is generally not preserved by the leapfrog method 5.7. Consider $H(p, q)=$ $\frac{1}{2}\left(p^{2}+q^{2}\right)$. Applying (5.7) gives

$$
\binom{p^{k+1}}{q^{k+1}}=\left[\begin{array}{cc}
1-\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{2} & -\Delta t\left(1-\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{4}\right)  \tag{5.17}\\
\Delta t & 1-\frac{(\Delta t)^{2}}{2}
\end{array}\right]\binom{p^{k}}{q^{k}}
$$

Since the propagation matrix in (5.17) is not orthogonal, $H(p, q)$ is not preserved along numerical solutions.

Consider the Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
H(p, q):=\frac{1}{2} p^{\top} M^{-1} p+V(q) \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $M$ is a symmetric positive definite matrix and the potential $V$ is a smooth function.
In the particular case of the Hamiltonian (5.18), the leapfrog method 5.7) reduces to the explicit method

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}=p^{k}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \nabla V\left(q^{k}\right)  \tag{5.19}\\
q^{k+1}=q^{k}+\Delta t M^{-1} p^{k+\frac{1}{2}} \\
p^{k+1}=p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \nabla V\left(q^{k+1}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

Note that the Hamiltonian (5.18) is invariant under $p \mapsto-p$ and the corresponding Hamiltonian system (5.1) is invariant under the transformation

$$
\left[\begin{array}{l}
p  \tag{5.20}\\
t
\end{array}\right] \mapsto\left[\begin{array}{l}
-p \\
-t
\end{array}\right]
$$

The time-reversal symmetry of 5.19 is preserved by the leapfrog method 5.19 .
5.2.6.3. Preserving volume. Recall that, due to equality of mixed partial derivatives, 5.2 is divergence-free, i.e.,

$$
\nabla \cdot f:=\sum_{i=1}^{2 d} \frac{\partial f_{i}}{\partial x_{i}}=0
$$

A remarkable feature of divergence-free vector fields is that the associated flows are volume preserving.

Given a map $\phi: \mathbb{R}^{2 d} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{2 d}$ and a domain $\Omega$, by change of variables

$$
\operatorname{vol}(\phi(\Omega))=\int_{\Omega}\left|\operatorname{det} \phi^{\prime}(y)\right| d y
$$

where $\phi^{\prime}$ is the Jacobian of $\phi$. It follows that $\phi$ preserves volume provided that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\operatorname{det} \phi^{\prime}(y)\right|=1 \quad \text { for } y \in \Omega \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\phi_{t}$ be the flow associated with $d x / d t=f(x)$, where $\nabla \cdot f=0$. Then $\phi_{t}$ satisfies

$$
\frac{d \phi_{t}(y)}{d t}=f\left(\phi_{t}(y)\right)
$$

and therefore, its Jacobian $\phi^{\prime}$ satisfies

$$
\frac{d \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)}{d t}=f^{\prime}\left(\phi_{t}(y)\right) \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)
$$

Assuming $\phi_{t}^{\prime}$ is invertible yields

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left[\frac{d \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)}{d t} \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)^{-1}\right]=\operatorname{tr} f^{\prime}\left(\phi_{t}(y)\right)
$$

Combining $\operatorname{tr} f^{\prime}=\nabla \cdot f=0$ and Jacobi's formula 3.39 for the derivative of a determinant gives

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left[\frac{d \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)}{d t} \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)^{-1}\right]=\frac{1}{\operatorname{det} \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)} \frac{d}{d t} \operatorname{det} \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)=0
$$

Hence,

$$
\operatorname{det} \phi_{t}^{\prime}(y)=\operatorname{det} \phi_{t=0}^{\prime}(y)=1
$$

The following result holds.
ThEOREM 5.13 (Liouville's theorem). The flow $\phi_{t}$ associated with the system

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(x)  \tag{5.22}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{2 d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where the $\mathcal{C}^{1}$ vector field $f$ is divergence-free, is a volume preserving map (for all $t$ ).
Note that if the system 5.22 is Hamiltonian, then Theorem 5.13 can be immediately obtained from the symplecticity of the associated flow. In fact, from

$$
\left(\phi_{t}^{\prime}\right)^{T} J \phi_{t}^{\prime}=J
$$

it follows that $\left|\operatorname{det} \phi_{t}^{\prime}\right|^{2}=1$ since $\operatorname{det} J=1$. Moreover, using the facts that $\operatorname{det} \phi_{t=0}^{\prime}=1$ and the continuity of the determinant, we obtain that $\operatorname{det} \phi_{t}^{\prime}=1$ for all $t$.

Remark 5.14. Since

$$
\nabla \cdot J^{-1} \nabla H(x)=-\sum_{j=1}^{d} \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial x_{j} \partial x_{d+j}}+\sum_{j=1}^{d} \frac{\partial^{2} H}{\partial x_{d+j} \partial x_{j}}=0
$$

for any smooth function $H$, Hamiltonian systems are divergence free equations. If $d=1$, all divergence-free systems are Hamiltonians since $\nabla \cdot f=0$ implies that $f=\nabla \times H$ for some function $H \in \mathcal{C}^{2}$ (at least locally) and

$$
J^{-1} \nabla=\nabla \times
$$

For $d>1$, the previous identity is no longer true. Consequently, divergence-free systems are not necessary Hamiltonians.

Definition 5.15. A numerical one-step method for solving (5.22) is said to be volume preserving if $\left|\operatorname{det} \Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}(p, q)\right|=1$ for all $p, q$.

Note that if 5.22 is a Hamiltonian system, then any symplectic numerical method preserves the volume. However, no standard methods can be volume-preserving for all divergence-free vector fields.

Example 5.16. Consider the divergence-free problem

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{r}
\frac{d x}{d t}=A x  \tag{5.23}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}^{2 d}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $A \in \mathbb{M}_{2 d}(\mathbb{R})$ and $\operatorname{tr} A=0$. The Explicit and implicit Euler's schemes for solving (5.23)

$$
\begin{gathered}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\Delta t A x^{k} \\
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\Delta t A x^{k+1}
\end{gathered}
$$

are volume-preserving if and only if

$$
|\operatorname{det}(I+\Delta t A)|=1
$$

and

$$
|\operatorname{det}(I-\Delta t A)|=1
$$

respectively.
5.2.7. Composition methods. Now using the fact that 5.2 is divergence-free, we have

$$
\begin{align*}
f_{2 d}(x) & =f_{2 d}(\bar{x})+\int_{\bar{x}}^{x_{2 d}} \frac{\partial f_{2 d}}{\partial x_{2 d}} d x_{2 d} \\
& =f_{2 d}(\bar{x})-\int_{\bar{x}}^{x_{2 d}}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{2 d-1} \frac{\partial f_{i}(x)}{\partial x_{i}}\right) d x_{2 d} \tag{5.24}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\bar{x}$ is an arbitrary point which can be chosen conveniently (e.g., if possible such that $f_{2 d}(\bar{x})=$ $0)$.

Substituting (5.24) into 5.2) yields

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{d x_{1}}{d t}=f_{1}(x) \\
& \vdots \\
& \frac{d x_{2 d-1}}{d t}=f_{2 d-1}(x)  \tag{5.25}\\
& \frac{d x_{2 d}}{d t}=f_{2 d}(\bar{x})-\sum_{i=1}^{2 d-1} \int_{\bar{x}}^{x_{2 d}} \frac{\partial f_{i}(x)}{\partial x_{i}} d x_{2 d}
\end{align*}
$$

We now split this as the sum of $2 d-1$ vector fields

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d x_{i}}{d t} & =0, \quad i \neq j, 2 d-1 \\
\frac{d x_{j}}{d t} & =f_{j}(x)  \tag{5.26}\\
\frac{d x_{2 d}}{d t} & =f_{2 d}(\bar{x}) \delta_{j, 2 d-1}-\int_{\bar{x}}^{x_{2 d}} \frac{\partial f_{j}(x)}{\partial x_{j}} d x_{2 d}
\end{align*}
$$

for $j=1, \ldots, 2 d-1$. Here $\delta$ is the Kronecker delta function.

Note that each of the $2 d-1$ vector fields is divergence-free. Moreover, we have split 5.25 into the $2 d-1$ problems (5.26). Each of these problems has a simpler structure than (5.2). In fact, each of them corresponds to a two-dimensional Hamiltonian system

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{d x_{j}}{d t} & =\frac{\partial H_{j}}{\partial x_{2 d}} \\
\frac{d x_{2 d}}{d t} & =-\frac{\partial H_{j}}{\partial x_{j}} \tag{5.27}
\end{align*}
$$

with Hamiltonian

$$
\begin{equation*}
H_{j}(x):=f_{2 d}(\bar{x}) \delta_{j, 2 d-1} x_{j}-\int_{\bar{x}}^{x_{2 d}} f_{j}(x) d x_{2 d} \tag{5.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

treating $x_{i}$ for $i \neq j, 2 d$ as fixed parameters.
Each of the two-dimensional problems (5.27) can either be solved exactly (if possible), or approximated with a symplectic integrator $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(j)}$. A volume-preserving integrator for $f$ is then given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{\Delta t}=\Phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} \circ \ldots \circ \Phi_{\Delta t}^{(2 d-1)} \tag{5.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

5.2.8. Splitting methods. Consider a Hamiltonian system

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f(x)=J^{-1} \nabla H(x), \quad H(x)=H_{1}(x)+H_{2}(x) \tag{5.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

and suppose the flows

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d x}{d t}=f_{1}(x)=J^{-1} \nabla H_{1}(x) \quad \text { and } \quad \frac{d x}{d t}=f_{2}(x)=J^{-1} \nabla H_{2}(x) \tag{5.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

can be exactly integrated.
Let $\phi_{t}^{(1)}$ and $\phi_{t}^{(2)}$ be the exact flows associated with the equations in 5.31 and let $\phi$ be the flow associated with 5.30.

Since the exact solution of a Hamiltonian system defines a symplectic map, we have

$$
\left(\left(\phi_{t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}\right)^{\top} J\left(\phi_{t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}=J \quad \text { and } \quad\left(\left(\phi_{t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\right)^{\top} J\left(\phi_{t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}=J
$$

Next consider the numerical method defined by composing these two exact flows:

$$
\Phi_{\Delta t}(x):=\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}(x) .
$$

This map is also symplectic, since

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top} J \Phi_{\Delta t}^{\prime}(x) & =\left(\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top} J\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x) \\
& =\left(\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top}\left(\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\right)^{\top} J\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}\right)^{\prime}\left(x^{*}\right)\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x) \\
& =\left(\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)\right)^{\top} J\left(\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\right)^{\prime}(x)=J,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $x^{*}=\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}(x)$. That is, as shown in Theorem 5.3. the composition of symplectic maps is again a symplectic map.

If, from a given initial value $x_{0}$, we first solve the first system to obtain a value $x_{\frac{1}{2}}$, and from this value integrate the second system to obtain $x_{1}$, we get two numerical integrators where one is the adjoint of the other:

$$
\Phi_{\Delta t}=\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)} \quad \text { and } \quad \Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}=\phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} .
$$

By Taylor expansion, we find that

$$
\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{(1)}\left(x_{0}\right)=\phi_{\Delta t}\left(x_{0}\right)+O\left((\Delta t)^{2}\right)
$$

so that $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ (and analogously $\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}$ ) gives approximation of order one to the solution of 5.30 .
Another idea is to use a symmetric version and put

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Phi_{\Delta t}=\phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{(1)} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)} \circ \phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{(1)} \tag{5.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

By breaking up in 5.32

$$
\phi_{\Delta t}^{(2)}=\phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{(2)} \circ \phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{(2)}
$$

an using Taylor expansion, we see that 5.32 is symmetric and of order two.
Example 5.17. Consider the separable Hamiltonian $H(p, q)=U(p)+V(q)$. Based on splitting the Hamiltonian $H$ into $U$ and $V$, we interpret the symplectic Euler methods and the leapfrog method for solving (5.2) as splitting methods.

To do so, we consider (5.30) as the sum of two Hamiltonians, the first one depending only on $p$, the second one only on $q$. The corresponding Hamiltonian systems

$$
\left\{\begin{array} { l } 
{ \frac { \mathrm { d } p } { \mathrm { d } t } = 0 , } \\
{ \frac { \mathrm { d } q } { \mathrm { d } t } = \frac { \partial U } { \partial p } ( p ) , } \\
{ p ( 0 ) = p _ { 0 } , q ( 0 ) = q _ { 0 } , }
\end{array} \quad \text { and } \quad \left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\mathrm{d} p}{\mathrm{~d} t}=-\frac{\partial V}{\partial q}(q) \\
\frac{\mathrm{d} q}{\mathrm{~d} t}=0 \\
p(0)=p_{0}, q(0)=q_{0}
\end{array}\right.\right.
$$

can be solved explicitly

Denoting the flows of these two systems by $\phi_{t}^{U}$ and $\phi_{t}^{V}$, we see that the symplectic Euler method

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
p^{k+1}=p^{k}-\Delta t \frac{\partial V}{\partial q}\left(q^{k}\right) \\
q^{k+1}=q^{k}+\Delta t \frac{\partial U}{\partial p}\left(p^{k+1}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

is just the composition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{\Delta t}^{U} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{V} \tag{5.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

and its adjoint is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{\Delta t}^{V} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{U} \tag{5.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

The leapfrog method

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{c}
p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}=p^{k}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial V}{\partial q}\left(q^{k}\right) \\
q^{k+1}=q^{k}+\Delta t \frac{\partial U}{\partial p}\left(p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}\right) \\
p^{k+1}=p^{k+\frac{1}{2}}-\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial V}{\partial q}\left(q^{k+1}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{V} \circ \phi_{\Delta t}^{U} \circ \phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{V} \tag{5.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Decompositions (5.33), 5.34), and 5.35) give second proofs of Theorems 5.2 and 5.6 in the case of a separable Hamiltonian. They also show that the symplectic Euler methods are of order one while the leapfrog method is order two.

### 5.3. Runge-Kutta methods

Now we turn to Runge-Kutta methods

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
x_{i, k}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)  \tag{5.36}\\
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(x_{i, k}\right)
\end{array}\right.
$$

for solving 5.2.
Theorem 5.18. (i) All the Runge-Kutta methods (5.36) preserve linear invariants;
(ii) The Runge-Kutta method (5.36) whose coefficients satisfy the condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
b_{i} a_{i j}+b_{j} a_{j i}-b_{i} b_{j}=0, \quad i, j=1, \ldots m \tag{5.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

preserves all quadratic invariants.
Proof. Define $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ by $x^{k+1}=\Phi_{\Delta t}\left(x^{k}\right)$. Let $F(x)=d^{\top} x$, where $d \in \mathbb{R}^{2 d}$. We compute

$$
F\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}\left(x^{k}\right)\right)=d^{\top}\left(x^{k}+\Delta t \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(x_{i, k}\right)\right)=d^{\top} x^{k}
$$

since $d^{\top} x$ is assumed to be an invariant of 5.2 and hence $d^{\top} f\left(x_{i, k}\right)=0$.
Next, let $F(x)=x^{\top} C x$, where $C$ is a symmetric $2 d \times 2 d$ matrix. Assume that $F$ is an invariant of (5.2). We have

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{\top} C f(x)=0 \quad \text { for all } x \tag{5.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
F\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}\left(x^{k}\right)\right)= & \left(x^{k}+\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} b_{j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)\right)^{\top} C\left(x^{k}+\Delta t \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(x_{i, k}\right)\right) \\
= & \left(x^{k}\right)^{\top} C x^{k}+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m}\left(x^{k}\right)^{\top} C b_{i} f\left(x_{i, k}\right)+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} b_{j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)^{\top} C x^{k} \\
& +(\Delta t)^{2} \sum_{i, j=1}^{m} b_{i} b_{j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)^{\top} C f\left(x_{i, k}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

From 5.38, we obtain

$$
\left(x_{i, k}\right)^{\top} C f\left(x_{i, k}\right)=0
$$

and hence, by writing

$$
x^{k}=x^{k}+\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)-\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)=x_{i, k}-\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right),
$$

we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
F\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}\left(x^{k}\right)\right)= & \left(x^{k}\right)^{\top} C x^{k}-(\Delta t)^{2} \sum_{i, j=1}^{m} b_{i} a_{i j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)^{\top} C f\left(x_{i, k}\right)-(\Delta t)^{2} \sum_{i, j=1}^{m} b_{j} a_{j i} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)^{\top} C f\left(x_{i, k}\right) \\
& +(\Delta t)^{2} \sum_{i, j=1}^{m} b_{i} b_{j} f\left(x_{j, k}\right)^{\top} C f\left(x_{i, k}\right) \\
= & \left(x^{k}\right)^{\top} C x^{k}-(\Delta t)^{2}\left(\sum_{i, j=1}^{m}\left(b_{i} a_{i j}+b_{j} a_{j i}-b_{i} b_{j}\right) f\left(x_{j, k}\right)^{\top} C f\left(x_{i, k}\right)\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, the Runge-Kutta method (5.36) preserves the quadratic invariant $F$ provided that (5.37) holds.

Lemma 1.19 shows that $H$ is an invariant of 5.2 . If $H$ is quadratic, then Theorem 5.18 says that the energy is preserved by the Runge-Kutta method (5.36) provided that condition (5.37) holds.

The following characterization of symplectic Runge-Kutta methods for solving (5.2) holds.
Theorem 5.19. The Runge-Kutta method (5.36) for solving (5.2) whose coefficients satisfy condition 5.37) is symplectic.

Proof. Theorem 1.25 shows that the flow $\phi_{t}$ is a symplectic transformation (if $H$ is smooth enough). Let $\Psi(t):=\frac{\partial \phi_{t}\left(x_{0}\right)}{\partial x_{0}}=\phi_{t}^{\prime}$, where $x_{0}$ is the initial condition. We have

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d \Psi}{d t}=f^{\prime}(x) \Psi  \tag{5.39}\\
\Psi(0)=I
\end{array}\right.
$$

Apply a Runge-Kutta method satisfying (5.37) to 5.2 and 5.39 to obtain the approximations $x^{k+1}$ and $\Psi^{k+1}$ from $x^{k}$ and $\Psi^{k}$. Since $\Psi^{\top} J \Psi$ is a quadratic invariant of $\sqrt{5.39)}$, we obtain

$$
\left(\Psi^{k}\right)^{\top} J \Psi^{k}=J \quad \text { for all } k
$$

Suppose for a moment that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi^{k+1}=\frac{\partial x^{k+1}}{\partial x^{k}} \tag{5.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

We obtain

$$
\left(\frac{\partial x^{k+1}}{\partial x^{k}}\right)^{\top} J \frac{\partial x^{k+1}}{\partial x^{k}}=J
$$

which means that the Runge-Kutta method for solving $(\sqrt{5.2})$ whose coefficients satisfy condition (5.37) is symplectic.

In order to complete the proof, we prove 5.40 . We want to show that the result of first applying $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ and then differentiating with respect to $x^{k}$ is the same as applying the same RungeKutta method to 5.39).

In fact, on the one hand, by differentiating with respect to $x^{k}$ we obtain

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial x_{i, k}}{\partial x^{k}}=I+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f^{\prime}\left(x_{j, k}\right) \frac{\partial x_{j, k}}{\partial x^{k}}  \tag{5.41}\\
\frac{\partial x^{k+1}}{\partial x^{k}}=I+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f^{\prime}\left(x_{i, k}\right) \frac{\partial x_{i, k}}{\partial x^{k}}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Multiplying the first equation in 5.41 by $f^{\prime}\left(x_{i, k}\right)$ yields the linear system in the unknowns $f^{\prime}\left(x_{i, k}\right) \frac{\partial x_{i, k}}{\partial x^{k}}$

$$
\begin{array}{r}
f^{\prime}\left(x_{i, k}\right) \frac{\partial x_{i, k}}{\partial x^{k}}=f^{\prime}\left(x_{i, k}\right)\left(I+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} f^{\prime}\left(x_{j, k}\right) \frac{\partial x_{j, k}}{\partial x^{k}}\right) \\
\frac{\partial x^{k+1}}{\partial x^{k}}=I+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f^{\prime}\left(x_{i, k}\right) \frac{\partial x_{i, k}}{\partial x^{k}} \tag{5.43}
\end{array}
$$

On the other hand, applying the same Runge-Kutta method to 5.39 yields

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\Psi_{i, k}=f^{\prime}\left(x^{k}+\Delta t \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} x_{j, k}\right)\left(I+(\Delta t) \sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j} \Psi_{j, k}\right) \\
\Psi^{k+1}=I+(\Delta t) \sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} \Psi_{i, k} \tag{5.45}
\end{array}
$$

We conclude the proof by observing that (5.44) is the same system as 5.42 but in the unknowns $\Psi_{i, k}, i=1, \ldots, m$. It is easily seen that this system has a unique solution for sufficiently small $\Delta t$, so it must be

$$
\Psi_{i, k}=f^{\prime}\left(x_{i, k}\right) \frac{\partial x_{i, k}}{\partial x^{k}} \quad \text { for } i=1, \ldots, m
$$

which, in view of 5.43 and 5.45 , yields 5.40 .

For arbitrary Hamiltonians, the only known symplectic one-step numerical methods are the symplectic Runge-Kutta methods of the form 4.55 that satisfy the symplectic condition (5.37).

Example 5.20. The midpoint scheme for solving (5.2)

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\Delta t f\left(\frac{x^{k}+x^{k+1}}{2}\right) \tag{5.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

is symplectic and preserves linear and quadratic invariants. Moreover, it is time-reversible.

### 5.4. Long-time behaviour of numerical solutions

In (5.17) we have seen that the energy is not exactly preserved by the leapfrog method 5.7. In that example, it is however, approximately preserved. As shown in the following theorem, the symplecticity of a one-step numerical method yields an approximate conservation of energy over very long times for general Hamiltonian systems.

Theorem 5.21. For an analytic Hamiltonian $H$ and a symplectic one-step numerical method $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ of order $n$, if the numerical trajectory remains in a compact subset, then there exist $h>0$ and $\Delta t^{*}>0$ such that, for $\Delta t \leq \Delta t^{*}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
H\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right)=H\left(p^{0}, q^{0}\right)+O\left((\Delta t)^{n}\right) \tag{5.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

for exponentially long times $k \Delta t \leq e^{\frac{h}{\Delta t}}$. Here, $\left(p^{k+1}, q^{k+1}\right)=\Phi_{\Delta t}\left(p^{k}, q^{k}\right)$.
Theorem 5.21) is based on simplicticity. It can be proved via backward error analysis. The idea is to deduce the long-time behavior estimate 5.47) from properties of the solution of the equation corresponding to an approximation $H_{\Delta t}$ of the Hamiltonian $H$.

Problem 5.22. Consider the flow $\phi_{t}$ of (5.2). Given a one-step numerical scheme $x^{k+1}=$ $\Phi_{\Delta t}\left(x^{k}\right)$, its adjoint

$$
x^{k+1}=\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}\left(x^{k}\right)
$$

is the method defined by

$$
x^{k}=\Phi_{-\Delta t}\left(x^{k+1}\right),
$$

or equivalently,

$$
x^{k+1}=\Phi_{-\Delta t}^{-1}\left(x^{k}\right)
$$

(i) Prove that $\phi_{t} \circ \phi_{s}=\phi_{t+s}$ and hence, $\phi_{t} \circ \phi_{-t}=I$, for $t, s \in \mathbb{R}$.
(ii) Prove that $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ is symmetric if and only if $\Phi_{\Delta t}=\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}$.
(iii) Prove that $\left(\Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}\right)^{*}=\Phi_{\Delta t}$.
(iv) Prove that for any one-step methods $\Phi_{\Delta t}$ and $\Psi_{\Delta t}$,

$$
\left(\Phi_{\Delta t} \circ \Psi_{\Delta t}\right)^{*}=\Psi_{\Delta t}^{*} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t}^{*}
$$

(v) Prove that for any one-step method $\Phi_{\Delta t}$,

$$
x^{k+1}=\Phi_{\Delta t / 2} \circ \Phi_{\Delta t / 2}^{*}\left(x^{k}\right)
$$

is a symmetric method.
Problem 5.23. Consider the Runge-Kutta method that is consistent, i.e., $\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i}=1$, and with coefficients such that $\sum_{j=1}^{m} a_{i j}=c_{i}$, for $1 \leq i \leq m$.
(i) Prove that the adjoint of the Runge-Kutta method is again a Runge-Kutta method, with coefficients given by

$$
a_{i j}^{*}=b_{m+1-j}-a_{m+1-i, m+1-j}, \quad b_{i}^{*}=b_{m+1-i} \quad \text { for } 1 \leq i, j \leq m
$$

(ii) Deduce that if the method is symmetric, then $a_{i j}=b_{j}-a_{m+1-i, m+1-j}$ for all $i, j=$ $1, \ldots, m$.
(iii) Prove that, if the Runge-Kutta method is explicit, then it can not be symmetric.

Problem 5.24. Consider the average vector field method

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\Delta t \int_{0}^{1} f\left(\theta x^{k+1}+(1-\theta) x^{k}\right) d \theta \tag{5.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the vector field $f$ is Lipschitz continuous.
(i) Prove that (5.48) is well-defined for a stepsize $\Delta t$ small enough.
(ii) Prove that (5.48) preserves exactly the energy of any Hamiltonian system.
(iii) Suppose that the Hamiltonian function is a polynomial. Prove that there exists a quadrature formula $\left(b_{i}, c_{i}\right)_{i=1, \ldots, m}$, with nodes $c_{i}$ and weights $b_{i}$, such that

$$
\int_{0}^{1} f\left(\theta x^{k+1}+(1-\theta) x^{k}\right) d \theta=\sum_{i=1}^{m} b_{i} f\left(x^{k}+c_{i}\left(x^{k+1}-x^{k}\right)\right)
$$

where $f(x)=J^{-1} \nabla H(x)$.
(iv) Construct a Runge-Kutta method that exactly preserves a given polynomial Hamiltonian $H$.

## CHAPTER 6

## Finite difference methods

### 6.1. Introduction

Finite difference methods are basic numerical solution methods for partial differential equations. They are obtained by replacing the derivatives in the equation by the appropriate numerical differentiation formulas. However, there is no guarantee that the resulting numerical scheme will accurately approximate the true solution. Further analysis is required. In this chapter, we establish some of the most basic finite difference schemes for the heat and the wave equations.

### 6.2. Numerical algorithms for the heat equation

### 6.2.1. Finite difference approximations. Consider the heat equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}-\gamma \frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial x^{2}}=0, \quad x \in[0,1], t \geq 0  \tag{6.1}\\
u(t, 0)=u(t, 1)=0, \quad t \geq 0 \\
u(0, x)=u_{0}(x), \quad x \in[0,1]
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $\gamma>0$ is the thermal conductivity.
In order to design a numerical approximation to the solution $u$ of 6.1), we begin by introducing a rectangular mesh consisting of points $\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right)$ with

$$
0=t_{0}<t_{1}<t_{2}<\ldots \quad \text { and } \quad 0=x_{0}<x_{1}<\ldots<x_{N+1}=1
$$

For simplicity, we maintain a uniform mesh spacing in both directions, with

$$
\Delta t=t_{k+1}-t_{k}, \quad \Delta x=x_{j+1}-x_{j}=\frac{1}{N}
$$

representing, respectively, the time step size and the spatial mesh size. We shall use the notation

$$
u_{j}^{k} \approx u\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right) \quad \text { where } t_{k}=k \Delta t, \quad x_{j}=j \Delta x,
$$

to denote the numerical approximation of $u$ at the mesh point $\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right)$.
The Dirichlet boundary conditions $u(t, 0)=u(t, 1)=0, t \geq 0$, yield

$$
u_{0}^{k}=u_{N+1}^{k}=0 \quad \text { for all } k>0
$$

As a first attempt at designing a numerical method, we shall employ the simplest finite difference approximations to the derivatives. The second order space derivative is approximated by

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial x^{2}}\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right) & \approx \frac{u\left(t_{k}, x_{j-1}\right)-2 u\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right)+u\left(t_{k}, x_{j+1}\right)}{(\Delta x)^{2}}+O\left((\Delta x)^{2}\right)  \tag{6.2}\\
& \approx \frac{u_{j-1}^{k}-2 u_{j}^{k}+u_{j+1}^{k}}{(\Delta x)^{2}}+O\left((\Delta x)^{2}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

Similarly, the time derivative can be approximated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right) \approx \frac{u\left(t_{k+1}, x_{j}\right)-u\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right)}{\Delta t}+O(\Delta t) \approx \frac{u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j}^{k}}{\Delta t}+O(\Delta t) \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Replacing the derivatives in the heat equation (6.1) by their finite difference approximations (6.2) and (6.3), we end up with the explicit scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j}^{k}}{\Delta t}+\gamma \frac{-u_{j-1}^{k}+2 u_{j}^{k}-u_{j+1}^{k}}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=0 \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $k \geq 0$ and $j \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$.
Let

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu:=\frac{\gamma \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^{2}} \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and let

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{(k)}:=\left(u_{1}^{k}, u_{2}^{k}, \ldots, u_{N}^{k}\right)^{\top} \approx\left(u\left(t_{k}, x_{1}\right), u\left(t_{k}, x_{2}\right), \ldots, u\left(t_{k}, x_{N}\right)\right)^{\top} \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

be the vector whose entries are the numerical approximations to the solution values at time $t_{k}$ at the interior nodes.

The scheme 6.4 can be written in the matrix form

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{(k+1)}=A u^{(k)} \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
A:=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
1-2 \mu & \mu & & &  \tag{6.8}\\
\mu & 1-2 \mu & \mu & & \\
& \mu & 1-2 \mu & \mu & \\
& \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\
& & \mu & 1-2 \mu & \mu \\
& & & \mu & 1-2 \mu
\end{array}\right)
$$

The matrix $A$ is symmetric and tridiagonal.
6.2.2. Consistency, stability, and convergence. A general finite difference method is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{\Delta t, \Delta x}\left(\left\{u_{j+n}^{k+m}\right\}_{m^{-} \leq m \leq m^{+}, n^{-} \leq n \leq n^{+}}\right)=0 \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the integers $m^{ \pm}, n^{ \pm}$define the width of the stencil of the scheme.
DEFINITION 6.1 (Consistency and order). The finite difference scheme (6.9) is consistent with the equation $F(u)=0$ if, for any smooth solution $u(x, t)$, the truncation error defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{\Delta t, \Delta x}\left(\left\{u\left(t_{k+m}, x_{j+n}\right)\right\}_{m^{-} \leq m \leq m^{+}, n^{-} \leq n \leq n^{+}}\right) \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

goes to zero as $\Delta t$ and $\Delta x$ go to zero independently. Moreover, the scheme is said to be of order $p$ in time and order $q$ in space if the truncation error is of the order of $O\left((\Delta t)^{p}+(\Delta x)^{q}\right)$ as $\Delta t$ and $\Delta x$ go to zero.

ThEOREM 6.2. The explicit scheme (6.4) is consistent with the heat equation (6.1), of order one in time and two in space. Moreover, if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\gamma \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=\frac{1}{6} \tag{6.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

then it is of order two in time and four in space.
Proof. Let $v(t, x) \in \mathcal{C}^{6}$. By the Taylor expansion of $v$ evaluated at $(t, x)$,

$$
\begin{align*}
& \frac{v(t+\Delta t, x)-v(t, x)}{\Delta t}+\gamma \frac{-v(t, x-\Delta x)+2 v(t, x)-v(t, x+\Delta x)}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=\left(\frac{\partial v}{\partial t}-\gamma \frac{\partial^{2} v}{\partial x^{2}}\right)(t, x)  \tag{6.12}\\
& \quad+\frac{\Delta t}{2} \frac{\partial^{2} v}{\partial t^{2}}(t, x)-\frac{\gamma(\Delta x)^{2}}{12} \frac{\partial^{4} v}{\partial x^{4}}(t, x)+O\left((\Delta t)^{2}+(\Delta x)^{4}\right)
\end{align*}
$$

If $v$ is a solution to (6.1), then it follows from (6.12) that the truncation error goes to zero as $\Delta t, \Delta x \rightarrow 0$ and hence, the explicit scheme is consistent. Moreover, it is of order 1 in time and 2 in space. If we suppose that 6.11 holds, then the terms in $\Delta t$ and $(\Delta x)^{2}$ cancel out since

$$
\frac{\partial^{2} v}{\partial t^{2}}=\gamma \frac{\partial^{3} v}{\partial t \partial x^{2}}=\gamma^{2} \frac{\partial^{4} v}{\partial x^{4}}
$$

Thus, the explicit scheme is of order 2 in time and 4 in space.
Definition 6.3 (Stability). A finite difference scheme is stable with respect to the norm $\left\|\|_{r}\right.$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|u^{(k)}\right\|_{r}:=\left(\sum_{j=1}^{N} \Delta x\left|u_{j}^{k}\right|^{r}\right)^{\frac{1}{r}}, \quad 1 \leq r \leq+\infty \tag{6.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $u^{(k)}$ is given by (6.6), if there exists a positive constant $C$ independent of $\Delta t$ and $\Delta x$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|u^{(k)}\right\|_{r} \leq C\left\|u^{(0)}\right\|_{r} \quad \text { for all } k \geq 0 \tag{6.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that

$$
\left\|u^{(k)}\right\|_{\infty}:=\sup _{1 \leq j \leq N}\left|u_{j}^{k}\right| .
$$

Definition 6.4 (Linear scheme). A finite difference scheme defined by (6.9) is said to be linear if 6.9) is linear with respect to its arguments $u_{j+n}^{k+m}$.

If a finite difference scheme is linear, then it can be written in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{(k+1)}=A u^{(k)} \tag{6.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $A$ is the iteration matrix. From 6.15, it follows that

$$
u^{(k+1)}=A^{k+1} u^{(0)}
$$

and therefore, the stability of 6.15 is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|A^{k} u^{(0)}\right\|_{r} \leq C\left\|u^{(0)}\right\|_{r}, \quad \text { for all } k \geq 0 \text { and } u^{(0)} \in \mathbb{R}^{N} \tag{6.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Introduce the matrix norm

$$
\|M\|_{r}=\sup _{u \in \mathbb{R}^{N}, u \neq 0} \frac{\|M u\|_{r}}{\|u\|_{r}} .
$$

The stability of 6.15 with respect to $\left\|\|_{r}\right.$ is equivalent to

$$
\left\|A^{k}\right\|_{r} \leq C, \quad \text { for all } k \geq 0
$$

6.2.2.1. Stability in the $L^{\infty}$ norm. Introduce the implicit scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j}^{k}}{\Delta t}+\gamma \frac{-u_{j-1}^{k+1}+2 u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j+1}^{k+1}}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=0 \tag{6.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

for $k \geq 0$ and $j \in\{1, \ldots, N\}$. The scheme (6.17) is well defined since $u^{(k+1)}$ can be obtained from $u^{(k)}$ by inverting the definite positive matrix

$$
\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
1+2 \mu & -\mu & & &  \tag{6.18}\\
-\mu & 1+2 \mu & -\mu & & \\
& -\mu & 1+2 \mu & -\mu & \\
& \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\
& & -\mu & 1+2 \mu & -\mu \\
& & & -\mu & 1+2 \mu
\end{array}\right)
$$

Theorem 6.5. (i) The explicit scheme (6.4) is stable with respect to the $L^{\infty}$ norm if and only if the following Courant-Friedrichs-Lewy (CFL) condition holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \gamma \Delta t \leq(\Delta x)^{2} \tag{6.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) The implicit scheme 6.17) is unconditionally stable with respect to the $L^{\infty}$ norm.
6.2.2.2. Stability in the $L^{2}$ norm. In order to investigate the stability of a finite difference scheme for solving the heat equation with the respect to the $L^{2}$ norm, we consider 6.1 with the periodic boundary conditions

$$
u(t, x+1)=u(t, x) \quad \text { for all } x \in[0,1], \quad t \geq 0
$$

For any $u^{(k)}=\left(u_{j}^{k}\right)_{j=0, \ldots, N}$, we associate a piecewise constant function $u^{(k)}(x)$, periodic with period 1 , defined on $[0,1]$ by

$$
u^{(k)}(x):=u_{j}^{k} \quad \text { for } x_{j-\frac{1}{2}}<x<x_{j+\frac{1}{2}}
$$

where

$$
x_{j+\frac{1}{2}}=\left(j+\frac{1}{2}\right) \Delta x, \quad j=0, \ldots, N, \quad x_{-\frac{1}{2}}=0, x_{N+1+\frac{1}{2}}=1
$$

The Fourier series of $u^{(k)}$ reads

$$
u^{(k)}(x)=\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \hat{u}_{n}^{(k)} e^{2 \pi i n x}
$$

where

$$
\hat{u}_{n}^{(k)}:=\int_{0}^{1} u^{(k)}(x) e^{-2 \pi i n x} d x
$$

Moreover, by Plancherel's formula, we have

$$
\int_{0}^{1}\left|u^{(k)}(x)\right|^{2} d x=\sum_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}\left|\hat{u}_{n}^{(k)}\right|^{2}
$$

Furthermore, an important property of Fourier series of periodic functions is that

$$
v^{(k)}(x)=u^{(k)}(x+\Delta x) \Rightarrow \hat{v}_{n}^{(k)}=\hat{u}_{n}^{(k)} e^{2 \pi i n \Delta x}
$$

With this notation, one can rewrite the explicit scheme (6.4) in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{u^{k+1}(x)-u^{k}(x)}{\Delta t}+\gamma \frac{-u^{k}(x-\Delta x)+2 u^{k}(x)-u^{k}(x+\Delta x)}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=0 \tag{6.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Applying the Fourier transform yields

$$
\hat{u}_{n}^{(k+1)}=\left(1-\frac{\gamma \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^{2}}\left(e^{-2 \pi i n \Delta x}+2-e^{2 \pi i n \Delta x}\right)\right) \hat{u}_{n}^{(k)}
$$

or equivalently,

$$
\hat{u}_{n}^{(k+1)}=\alpha(n) \hat{u}_{n}^{(k)}=\alpha(n)^{k+1} \hat{u}^{(0)}(n) \quad \text { with } \alpha(n):=1-\frac{4 \gamma \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^{2}}(\sin (\pi n \Delta x))^{2}
$$

Therefore, $\hat{u}_{n}^{(k)}$ is bounded as $k \rightarrow+\infty$ if and only if the amplification factor $\alpha(n)$ satisfies

$$
|\alpha(n)| \leq 1 \quad \text { for all } n \in \mathbb{Z}
$$

Similarly, the implicit scheme 6.17) can be rewritten in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{u^{k+1}(x)-u^{k}(x)}{\Delta t}+\gamma \frac{-u^{k+1}(x-\Delta x)+2 u^{k+1}(x)-u^{k+1}(x+\Delta x)}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=0 \tag{6.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Again, by applying the Fourier transform, it follows that

$$
\hat{u}_{n}^{(k+1)}=\beta(n) \hat{u}_{n}^{(k)}=\beta(n)^{k+1} \hat{u}^{(0)}(n)
$$

where

$$
\beta(n):=\left(1+\frac{4 \gamma \Delta t}{(\Delta x)^{2}}(\sin (\pi n \Delta x))^{2}\right)^{-1}
$$

Theorem 6.6. (i) The explicit scheme 6.4) is stable with respect to the $L^{2}$ norm if and only if the CFL condition 6.19) holds.
(ii) The implicit scheme 6.17 is unconditionally stable with respect to the $L^{2}$ norm.

### 6.2.3. Convergence.

ThEOREM 6.7 (Lax theorem). Let $u$ be a smooth solution of the heat equation (6.1). Suppose that the finite difference scheme for computing the numerical solution $u_{j}^{k}$ is linear, consistent, and stable with respect to the norm $\left\|\|_{r}\right.$. Let $e_{j}^{k}:=u_{j}^{k}-u\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right)$ and $e^{(k)}=\left(e_{1}^{k}, e_{2}^{k}, \ldots, e_{N}^{k}\right)^{\top}$. Assume that $u_{j}^{0}=u_{0}\left(x_{j}\right)$. Then,

$$
\lim _{\Delta t, \Delta x \rightarrow 0}\left(\sup _{t_{k} \leq T}\left\|e^{(k)}\right\|_{r}\right)=0 \quad \text { for all } T>0
$$

Moreover, if the scheme is of order $p$ in time and $q$ in space, then there exists a constant $C_{T}>0$ such that

$$
\sup _{t_{k} \leq T}\left\|e^{(k)}\right\|_{r} \leq C_{T}\left((\Delta t)^{p}+(\Delta x)^{q}\right)
$$

Proof. Let $u^{(k+1)}=A u^{(k)}$, where $A$ is the iteration matrix, and let $\widetilde{u}_{j}^{k}=u\left(t_{k}, x_{j}\right)$. Since the scheme is consistent, there exists $\epsilon^{(k)}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\widetilde{u}^{(k+1)}=A \widetilde{u}^{(k)}+(\Delta t) \epsilon^{(k)} \quad \text { and } \quad \lim _{\Delta t, \Delta x \rightarrow 0}\left\|\epsilon^{(k)}\right\|_{r}=0 \tag{6.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

uniformly in $k$. If the scheme is of order $p$ in time and $q$ in space, then

$$
\left\|\epsilon^{(k)}\right\|_{r} \leq C\left((\Delta t)^{p}+(\Delta x)^{q}\right)
$$

By subtracting 6.22 from 6.15 , we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
e^{(k+1)}=A e^{(k)}-\Delta t \epsilon^{k} \tag{6.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

and therefore, by induction,

$$
\begin{equation*}
e^{(k)}=A^{k} e^{(0)}-\Delta t \sum_{l=1}^{k} A^{k-l} \epsilon^{l-1} \tag{6.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

The stability of the scheme yields

$$
\left\|A^{k}\right\|_{r} \leq C^{\prime}
$$

for some positive constant $C^{\prime}$. Therefore, since $e^{(0)}=0,6.24$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|e^{(k)}\right\|_{r} \leq(\Delta t) k C C^{\prime}\left((\Delta t)^{p}+(\Delta x)^{q}\right) \leq T C C^{\prime}\left((\Delta t)^{p}+(\Delta x)^{q}\right) \tag{6.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

The proof is then complete.

### 6.3. Numerical algorithms for the wave equation

Consider the wave equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial t^{2}}=c^{2} \frac{\partial^{2} u}{\partial x^{2}}, \quad 0<x<1, \quad t \geq 0  \tag{6.26}\\
u(t, x+1)=u(t, x), \quad 0<x<1, \quad t \geq 0 \\
u(0, x)=u_{0}(x), \quad 0<x<1 \\
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}(0, x)=u_{1}(x), \quad 0<x<1
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $c>0$ is the wave speed.
Suppose that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{1} u_{1}(x) d x=0 \tag{6.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

A standard finite difference scheme for solving (6.26) is the $\theta$-centered scheme

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{u_{j}^{k+1}-2 u_{j}^{k}+u_{j}^{k-1}}{(\Delta t)^{2}}+\theta c^{2} \frac{-u_{j-1}^{k+1}+2 u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j+1}^{k+1}}{(\Delta x)^{2}}  \tag{6.28}\\
\quad+(1-2 \theta) c^{2} \frac{-u_{j-1}^{k}+2 u_{j}^{k}-u_{j+1}^{k}}{(\Delta x)^{2}}+\theta c^{2} \frac{-u_{j-1}^{k-1}+2 u_{j}^{k-1}-u_{j+1}^{k-1}}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=0
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $0 \leq \theta \leq 1 / 2$.
If $\theta=0$, then the scheme is explicit, while it is implicit if $\theta \neq 0$.
The initial conditions can be expressed by

$$
u_{j}^{0}=u_{0}\left(x_{j}\right) \quad \text { and } \quad \frac{u_{j}^{1}-u_{j}^{0}}{\Delta t}=\int_{x_{j-1 / 2}}^{x_{j+1 / 2}} u_{1}(x) d x
$$

which shows that (6.27) is satisfied by the numerical solution.
THEOREM 6.8. If $1 / 4 \leq \theta \leq 1 / 2$, then the $\theta$-centered scheme (6.28) is unconditionally stable with respect to the $L^{2}$ norm. If $0 \leq \theta<1 / 4$, 6.28) is stable provided that the CFL condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{c \Delta t}{\Delta x}<\sqrt{\frac{1}{1-4 \theta}} \tag{6.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

holds and is unstable if $c \Delta t / \Delta x>1 / \sqrt{1-4 \theta}$.

### 6.4. Numerical algorithms for the Hamilton-Jacobi equation in one dimension

Consider the Hamiltonian-Jacobi equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}+H\left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}\right)=0, \quad x \in \mathbb{R}, t \geq 0  \tag{6.30}\\
u(0, x)=u_{0}(x), \quad x \in \mathbb{R}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $H(y)=y^{2}$.
Consider the upwind scheme

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{j}^{k+1}=u_{j}^{k}-\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x} H\left(\frac{u_{j}^{k}-u_{j-1}^{k}}{\Delta x}\right) \tag{6.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

Introduce

$$
v=\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}
$$

Then, $v$ solves

$$
\begin{cases}\frac{\partial v}{\partial t}+\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(H(v))=0, & x \in \mathbb{R}, t \geq 0  \tag{6.32}\\ v(0, x)=v_{0}(x)=\frac{\partial u_{0}}{\partial x}, & x \in \mathbb{R}\end{cases}
$$

The upwind scheme for solving 6.32 is

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{j}^{k+1}=v_{j}^{k}-\frac{\Delta t}{\Delta x}\left(H\left(v_{j}^{k}\right)-H\left(v_{j-1}^{k}\right)\right) \tag{6.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

The scheme (6.33) is related to (6.31) via the corresponding substitution:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{u_{j+1}^{k}-u_{j}^{k}}{\Delta x}=v_{j}^{k} \tag{6.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Problem 6.9. Consider the advection equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}=-v \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \quad 0<x<1, \quad t \geq 0  \tag{6.35}\\
u(t, x+1)=u(t, x), \quad 0<x<1, \quad t \geq 0 \\
u(0, x)=u_{0}(x), \quad 0<x<1
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $v>0$.
(i) Prove that the centered explicit scheme

$$
\frac{u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j}^{k}}{\Delta t}+v \frac{u_{j+1}^{k}-u_{j-1}^{k}}{2 \Delta x}=0
$$

is unconditionally unstable in $L^{2}$.
(ii) Prove that the Lax-Friedrichs scheme

$$
\frac{2 u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j+1}^{k}-u_{j-1}^{k}}{2 \Delta t}+v \frac{u_{j+1}^{k}-u_{j-1}^{k}}{2 \Delta x}=0
$$

is consistent if $\Delta t / \Delta x$ is constant as $\Delta t, \Delta x \rightarrow 0$, stable in $L^{2}$ under the CFL condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
v \Delta t \leq \Delta x \tag{6.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

and of order 1 in time and space.
(iii) Prove that the Lax-Wendroff scheme

$$
\frac{u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j}^{k}}{\Delta t}+v \frac{u_{j+1}^{k}-u_{j-1}^{k}}{2 \Delta x}-\frac{v^{2} \Delta t}{2} \frac{u_{j-1}^{k}-2 u_{j}^{k}+u_{j+1}^{k}}{(\Delta x)^{2}}=0
$$

is consistent, stable in $L^{2}$ under the CFL condition (6.36), and is of order 2 in time and space.
(iv) Prove that the leapfrog scheme

$$
\frac{u_{j}^{k+1}-u_{j}^{k-1}}{2 \Delta t}+v \frac{u_{j+1}^{k}-u_{j-1}^{k}}{2 \Delta x}=0
$$

is consistent and is stable in $L^{2}$ under the CFL condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
v \Delta t \leq M \Delta x \tag{6.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $M<1$.

## CHAPTER 7

## Stochastic differential equations

### 7.1. Introduction

Stochastic differential equation models play a prominent role in a range of applications areas, including biology, chemistry, and finance. In this chapter, we keep the theory to a minimum and explain how to apply Euler's method to a simple stochastic differential equation and discuss the concept of convergence from practical point of view.

### 7.2. Langevin equation

In this section we consider the Langevin equation (1.6), which is a linear stochastic ODE of order 1.

For a random variable $x$, we denote $E[x]$ the mean-value of $x$ and

$$
V(x):=E\left[|x-E(x)|^{2}\right]=E\left[x^{2}\right]-E[x]^{2}
$$

the variance of $x$. If $x$ has a Gaussian (or normal) distribution, with mean $m$ and variance $\sigma^{2}$, we write $x$ is an $N\left(m, \sigma^{2}\right)$ random variable.

A collection $\{x(t): t \geq 0\}$ of random variables is called a stochastic process.
Definition 7.1. A real-valued stochastic process $W$ is called a Brownian motion if
(i) $W(0)=0$ almost surely,
(ii) $W(t)-W(s)$ is an $N(0, t-s)$ random variable for all $t \geq s \geq 0$,
(iii) for all times $0<t_{1}<t_{2}<\ldots<t_{n}$, the random variables $W\left(t_{1}\right), W\left(t_{2}\right)-W\left(t_{1}\right), \ldots, W\left(t_{n}\right)-$ $W\left(t_{n-1}\right)$ are independent.

Note in particular that if $W$ is a Brownian motion, then

$$
\left.E[W(t)]=0, \quad E\left[W^{( } t\right)\right]=t \quad \text { for each time } t \geq 0
$$

In 1.6), we write $\eta(t)=\sigma \xi(t)$, where $\sigma$ is a diffusion coefficient and $\xi(\cdot)$ is white noise, and interpret this to mean

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d x=-a x d t+\sigma d W  \tag{7.1}\\
x(0)=x_{0}
\end{array}\right.
$$

for some initial distribution $x_{0}$ such that $V\left[x_{0}\right]<+\infty$.
The solution to (7.1) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=e^{-a t} x_{0}+\sigma \int_{0}^{t} e^{-a(t-s)} d W, \quad t \geq 0 \tag{7.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Observe that

$$
E[x(t)]=e^{-a t} E\left[x_{0}\right]
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
E\left[x^{2}(t)\right] & =E\left[e^{-2 a t} x_{0}^{2}+2 \sigma e^{-a t} x_{0} \int_{0}^{t} e^{-a(t-s)} d W+\sigma^{2}\left(\int_{0}^{t} e^{-a(t-s)} d W\right)^{2}\right] \\
& =e^{-2 a t} E\left[x_{0}^{2}\right]+2 \sigma e^{-a t} E\left[x_{0}\right] E\left[\int_{0}^{t} e^{-a(t-s)} d W\right]+\sigma^{2} \int_{0}^{t} e^{-2 a(t-s)} d s \\
& =e^{-2 a t} E\left[x_{0}^{2}\right]+\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2 a}\left(1-e^{-2 a t}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus the variance $V[x(t)]$ is given by

$$
V[x(t)]=e^{-2 a t} V\left[x_{0}\right]+\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2 a}\left(1-e^{-2 a t}\right)
$$

Therefore, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
E[x(t)] \rightarrow 0, \quad V[x(t)] \rightarrow \frac{\sigma^{2}}{2 a}, \quad t \rightarrow+\infty \tag{7.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the explicit form 7.2 of the solution, we see that the distribution of $x(t)$ approaches $N\left(0, \frac{\sigma^{2}}{2 a}\right)$ as $t \rightarrow+\infty$.

### 7.3. Ornstein-Uhlenbeck equation

For any initial distribution $x_{0}$, the solution of the Langevin (7.1) for large time is approximately a Gaussian distribution whose variance $\sigma^{2} /(2 a)$ represents a balance between the random disturbing force $\sigma \xi(\cdot)$ and the friction damping force $-a x(\cdot)$.

A better model of Brownian movement is provided by the Ornstein-Uhlenbeck equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\frac{d^{2} y}{d t^{2}}=-a \frac{d y}{d t}+\sigma \xi  \tag{7.4}\\
y(0)=y_{0}, \quad \frac{d y}{d t}(0)=y_{1}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $y(t)$ is the position of Brownian particle at time $t, y_{0}$ and $y_{1}$ are given Gaussian random variables. As before, $a>0$ is the friction coefficient, $\sigma$ is the diffusion coefficient, and $\xi(\cdot)$ is white noise.

Then $x:=d y / d t$ satisfies the Langevin equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d x=-a x d t+\sigma d W  \tag{7.5}\\
x(0)=y_{1}
\end{array}\right.
$$

Hence,

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=e^{-a t} y_{1}+\sigma \int_{0}^{t} e^{-a(t-s)} d W, \quad t \geq 0 \tag{7.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
y(t)=y_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} x(s) d s, \quad t \geq 0 \tag{7.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover,

$$
\begin{aligned}
E[y(t)] & =E\left[y_{0}\right]+\int_{0}^{t} E[x(s)] d s \\
& =E\left[y_{0}\right]+\int_{0}^{t} e^{-a s} E\left[y_{1}\right] d s \\
& =E\left[y_{0}\right]+\frac{\left(1-e^{-a t}\right)}{a} E\left[y_{1}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
V[y(t)]=V\left[y_{0}\right]+\frac{\sigma^{2}}{a^{2}} t+\frac{\sigma^{2}}{2 a^{3}}\left(-3+4 e^{-a t}-e^{-2 a t}\right)
$$

### 7.4. Existence and uniqueness of solutions in dimension one

Suppose that $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is $\mathcal{C}^{1}$, with $\left|f^{\prime}\right| \leq C_{f}$. Consider

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d x=f(x) d t+\sigma d W, \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{7.8}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}
\end{array}\right.
$$

From

$$
\begin{equation*}
x(t)=x_{0}+\int_{0}^{t} f(x) d s+\sigma W(t), \quad t \geq 0 \tag{7.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

we construct a solution to 7.9 by the successive approximation method. We define $x^{(0)}=x_{0}$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{(n+1)}=x^{(n)}+\int_{0}^{t} f\left(x^{(n)}\right) d s+\sigma W(t), \quad t \geq 0 \tag{7.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define

$$
\epsilon^{(n)}(t):=\max _{0 \leq s \leq t}\left|x^{(n+1)}(s)-x^{(n)}(s)\right|, \quad n \geq 0
$$

We have

$$
\epsilon^{(0)}(t)=\max _{0 \leq s \leq t}\left|\int_{0}^{s} f(x(\tau)) d \tau+\sigma W(s)\right| \leq C
$$

for some constant $C$ and, for $n \geq 1$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\epsilon^{(n)}(t) & =\max _{0 \leq s \leq t}\left|\int_{0}^{s} f\left(x^{(n+1)}(s)\right)-f\left(x^{(n)}(s)\right) d s\right| \\
& \leq C_{f} \int_{0}^{t} \epsilon^{(n)}(s) d s \\
& \leq C_{f} \int_{0}^{t} C \frac{C_{f}^{n-1} s^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} d s \quad \text { by the induction assumption } \\
& =C \frac{C_{f}^{n} t^{n}}{n!}
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, for $m \geq n$,

$$
\max _{0 \leq t \leq T}\left|x^{(m)}(t)-x^{(n)}(t)\right| \leq C \sum_{l=n}^{+\infty} \frac{C_{f}^{l} T^{l}}{l!} \quad \text { as } n \rightarrow+\infty
$$

Therefore, $x^{(n)}$ converges uniformly for $0 \leq t \leq T$ to a limit process $x(\cdot)$ which solves 7.8).
Thus the following result holds.
TheOrem 7.2. Assume that $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is $\mathcal{C}^{1}$, with $\left|f^{\prime}\right| \leq C_{f}$. The stochastic differential equation (7.8), where $W$ is a Brownian motion, has a unique solution.

### 7.5. Numerical solution of stochastic differential equations

We first consider discretized Brownian motion, where $W(t)$ is specified at discrete $t$ values. We thus set $\Delta t=T / K$ for some positive integer $K$ and let $W^{k}$ denote $W\left(t_{k}\right)$ with $t_{k}=k \Delta t$. From Definition 7.1, we have $W^{0}=0$ with probability 1 , and

$$
\begin{equation*}
W^{k+1}=W^{k}+d W^{k+1}, \quad k=0, \ldots, K-1 \tag{7.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

where each $d W^{k}$ is an independent random variable of the form $\sqrt{\Delta t} N(0,1)$.
On the other hand, the stochastic integral $\int_{0}^{T} h(t) d W(t)$ can be approximated by the Riemann sum

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=0}^{K-1} h\left(t_{k}\right)\left(W\left(t_{k+1}\right)-W\left(t_{k}\right)\right) \tag{7.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that an alternative to the Riemann sum 7.12 is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{k=0}^{K-1} h\left(\frac{t_{k}+t_{k+1}}{2}\right)\left(W\left(t_{k+1}\right)-W\left(t_{k}\right)\right) \tag{7.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The Euler-Maruyama method Euler-Maruyama method for solving 7.8 over $[0, T]$ takes the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
x^{k+1}=x^{k}+\Delta t f\left(x^{k}\right)+\sigma\left(W^{k+1}-W^{k}\right), \quad k=0, \ldots, K-1 . \tag{7.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that in the deterministic case $(\sigma=0)$, 7.14) reduces to explicit Euler's method 4.17).
Definition 7.3. A numerical method is said to have a strong order of convergence equal to $\gamma$ if there exists a constant $C$ such that

$$
E\left[\left|x^{k}-x\left(t_{k}\right)\right|\right] \leq C(\Delta t)^{\gamma}
$$

for any fixed $k=0, \ldots, K$, and $\Delta t$ small.
It can be shown that the Euler-Maruyama method 7.14 has strong order of convergence $\gamma=1 / 2$, which, in view of Theorem 4.7. marks a departure from the deterministic setting.

Problem 7.4. Consider the equation

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d x=a x d t+b x d W, \quad t \in[0, T]  \tag{7.15}\\
x(0)=x_{0} \in \mathbb{R}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $a$ and $b$ are real constants and $W$ is a Brownian motion.
(i) Prove that

$$
x(t)=x_{0} e^{\left(a-\frac{b^{2}}{2}\right) t+b W(t)}, \quad t \in[0, T]
$$

(ii) Apply the Euler-Maruyama method for solving 7.15.

Problem 7.5. Consider the system of equations

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
d p=q d t  \tag{7.16}\\
d q=-p d t+d W(t) \\
p(0)=p_{0}, q(0)=q_{0} \in \mathbb{R}
\end{array}\right.
$$

where $p_{0}$ and $q_{0}$ are independent of the Brownian motion $W$.
(i) Apply the Euler-Maruyama method for solving 7.16.
(ii) Generalize the leapfrog method (5.7) to (7.16).

## Bibliography

[1] E. Hairer, C. Lubich, and G. Wanner, Geometric numerical integration. Structure-preserving algorithms for ordinary differential equations. Second edition. Springer Series in Computational Mathematics, 31. SpringerVerlag, Berlin, 2006.
[2] E. Süli and D.F. Mayers, An introduction to numerical analysis. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2003.
[3] G. Teschl, Ordinary differential equations and dynamical systems. Graduate Studies in Mathematics, 140. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2012.

## Index

$\theta$-centered scheme, 84
adjoint method, 67
advection equation, 84
autonomous system, 36
Banach fixed point theorem, 19
Bernoulli equation, 8
Brownian motion, 87
Cauchy-Lipschitz theorem, 20,28
Cauchy-Peano existence theorem, 21
CFL condition, 81
collocation, 51
composition method, 71
consistency, 41,53,58,80
convergence, 42,58
Dahlquist-Lax equivalence theorem, 42
discretization points, 41
divergence-free equation, 70
eikonal equation, 62
Euler-Maruyama method, 90
exact equation, 10
explicit Euler scheme, 44
explicit one-step method, 41
explicit scheme, 80
exponential of a matrix, 27
finite difference method, 79
flow, 14
Fourier analysis, 82
fourth-order Runge-Kutta method, 50
fundamental matrix, 32
geometrical numerical integration, 65
global error, 42
gradient system, 16
Gronwall's lemma, 19
Hamilton-Jacobi equation, 1762
Hamiltonian, 12
Hamiltonian system, 12
Hamiltonian-Jacobi equation, 17,84
heat equation, 79
Helmholtz equation, 62
implicit Euler's scheme, 48
implicit scheme, 82
improved Euler scheme, 47
inner expansion, 62
integral equation method, 45
invariant, 12
invariant preserving, 69
Jacobi's formula, 39,70
Jordan-Chevalley decomposition, 27
Lagrange interpolating polynomial, 51
Lagrange interpolation formula, 51
Langevin equation, 87
Lax theorem, 83
Lax-Friedrichs scheme, 85
Lax-Wendroff scheme, 85
leapfrog method, 67, 85
linear scheme, 81
Liouville's theorem, 70
Lipschitz condition, 20
local stability, 36
long-time behavior, 76
Lyapunov function, 37
matching condition, 61
method of integrating factors, 9
midpoint rule, 47
midpoint scheme, 47
multi-step method, 55
numerical flow, 66
numerical integration formula, 46
order, 43,5480
Ornstein-Uhlenbeck equation, 88
outer expansion, 61
perturbation theory, 59
Poincaré's theorem, 14
propagation matrix, 69
reversibility, 68
Riccati equation, 8
round off error, 44
Runge-Kutta method, 49
Schrödinger equation, 62
Simpson's rule, 46
singular perturbation theory, 60
spectral radius, 53
splitting method, 72
stability, 42 53 58 81
stiff equation, 58
stochastic process, 87
strong continuity theorem, 23
structure preserving method, 65
successive approximation method, 89
symmetry, 68
symplectic linear mapping, 14
symplectic method, 65
symplectic Runge-Kutta method, 73
time-reversal symmetry, 69
transport equation, 63
Trapezoidal rule, 46
Trapezoidal scheme, 4647
truncation error, 41
upwind scheme, 84
volume preserving, 71
wave equation, 83
Wronskian determinant, 30

